

# Set of General Math and Motor Control Functions for Cortex M4 Core

User Reference Manual

MCLIBCORETXM4UG  
Rev. 1.4  
12/2012

[freescale.com](http://freescale.com)

Page intentionally left blank.

Page intentionally left blank.

The following revision history table summarizes changes contained in this document.

Table 0-1: Revision History

Date	Revision Label	Description
6/2011	1	Initial Release for 1.0
3/2012	1.2	Release for 1.2 including Metrowerks CodeWarrior 10.2 support
5/2012	1.3	Compatible data type modification, release for 1.3
12/2012	1.4	Release for 1.3 including uVision Keil V4.6 support r1.4

---

# CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>License Agreement</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>5</b>
	2.1 MC Library Architecture Overview . . . . .	5
	2.2 Supported Compilers . . . . .	6
	2.3 Installation . . . . .	7
	2.4 Library File Structure . . . . .	9
	2.5 Library Integration into an IAR Embedded Workbench IDE . . . . .	11
	2.6 Library Integration into an Metrowerks CodeWarrior Development Studio . . . . .	13
	2.7 Library Integration into a Keil uVision IDE . . . . .	15
<b>3</b>	<b>GFLIB</b>	<b>17</b>
	3.1 Function API Overview . . . . .	17
	3.2 GFLIB_Sin . . . . .	19
	3.3 GFLIB_Cos . . . . .	23
	3.4 GFLIB_Tan . . . . .	27
	3.5 GFLIB_Asin . . . . .	32
	3.6 GFLIB_Acos . . . . .	36
	3.7 GFLIB_Atan . . . . .	40
	3.8 GFLIB_AtanYX . . . . .	44
	3.9 GFLIB_AtanYXShifted . . . . .	46
	3.10 GFLIB_Sqrt . . . . .	51
	3.11 GFLIB_Sign . . . . .	54
	3.12 GFLIB_Lut1D . . . . .	56
	3.13 GFLIB_Hyst . . . . .	60
	3.14 GFLIB_Ramp . . . . .	63
	3.15 GFLIB_Limit . . . . .	65
	3.16 GFLIB_LowerLimit . . . . .	67
	3.17 GFLIB_UpperLimit . . . . .	69
	3.18 GFLIB_IntegratorTR . . . . .	71
	3.19 GFLIB_ControllerPIr . . . . .	74
	3.20 GFLIB_ControllerPIp . . . . .	78
	3.21 GFLIB_ControllerPIpAW . . . . .	81
<b>4</b>	<b>GMCLIB</b>	<b>85</b>
	4.1 Function API Overview . . . . .	85
	4.2 GMCLIB_Clark . . . . .	86
	4.3 GMCLIB_ClarkInv . . . . .	88

4.4	GMCLIB_Park	90
4.5	GMCLIB_ParkInv	92
4.6	GMCLIB_ElimDcBusRip	94
4.7	GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSM	98
4.8	GMCLIB_SvmStd	103
4.9	GMCLIB_VectorLimit	114
<b>5</b>	<b>GDFLIB</b>	<b>118</b>
5.1	Function API Overview	118
5.2	GDFLIB_FilterIIR1Init	119
5.3	GDFLIB_FilterIIR1	121
5.4	GDFLIB_FilterIIR2Init	124
5.5	GDFLIB_FilterIIR2	126
5.6	GDFLIB_FilterFIRInit	129
5.7	GDFLIB_FilterFIR	132
5.8	GDFLIB_FilterMAInit	135
5.9	GDFLIB_FilterMA	137
<b>6</b>	<b>Data Types</b>	<b>139</b>
6.1	Defined in <SWLIBS_Typedefs.h>	139
<b>7</b>	<b>Compound Data Types</b>	<b>140</b>
7.1	FILTER_IIR1_COEFF_T	143
7.2	FILTER_IIR2_COEFF_T	144
7.3	GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR1_T	145
7.4	GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR2_T	146
7.5	GDFLIB_FILTER_MA_T	147
7.6	GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_PARAM_T	148
7.7	GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_STATE_T	149
7.8	GFLIB_ACOS_TAYLOR_COEF_T	150
7.9	GFLIB_ACOS_TAYLOR_T	151
7.10	GFLIB_ASIN_TAYLOR_COEF_T	152
7.11	GFLIB_ASIN_TAYLOR_T	153
7.12	GFLIB_ATAN_TAYLOR_COEF_T	154
7.13	GFLIB_ATAN_TAYLOR_T	155
7.14	GFLIB_ATANYXSHIFTED_T	156
7.15	GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_P_T	157
7.16	GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_R_T	158
7.17	GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PIAW_P_T	159
7.18	GFLIB_COSTLR_T	160
7.19	GFLIB_HYST_T	161
7.20	GFLIB_INTEGRATOR_TR_T	162
7.21	GFLIB_LIMIT_T	163
7.22	GFLIB_LOWERLIMIT_T	164
7.23	GFLIB_LUT1D_T	165
7.24	GFLIB_RAMP_T	166
7.25	GFLIB_SINTLR_T	167
7.26	GFLIB_TAN_TAYLOR_COEF_T	168

7.27	GFLIB_TANTLR_T	169
7.28	GFLIB_UPPERLIMIT_T	170
7.29	GMCLIB_ELIM_DC_BUS_RIP_T	171
7.30	GMCLIB_VectorLimit_T	172
7.31	MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T	173
7.32	MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T	174
7.33	MCLIB_3_COOR_SYST_T	175
7.34	MCLIB_ANGLE_T	176
7.35	MCLIB_DECOUPLING_PMSM_PARAM_T	177
<b>8</b>	<b>Macro Definitions</b>	<b>178</b>
8.1	Macro Definitions Overview	178
8.2	GDFLIB_FilterFIRInit	181
8.3	GDFLIB_FilterFIR	182
8.4	GDFLIB_FilterIIR1Init	183
8.5	GDFLIB_FilterIIR1	184
8.6	GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR1_DEFAULT	185
8.7	GDFLIB_FilterIIR2Init	186
8.8	GDFLIB_FilterIIR2	187
8.9	GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR2_DEFAULT	188
8.10	GDFLIB_FilterMAInit	189
8.11	GDFLIB_FilterMA	190
8.12	GDFLIB_FILTER_MA_DEFAULT	191
8.13	GFLIB_Acos	192
8.14	GFLIB_Asin	193
8.15	GFLIB_Atan	194
8.16	GFLIB_AtanXY	195
8.17	GFLIB_AtanYXShifted	196
8.18	GFLIB_ControllerPIp	197
8.19	GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_P_DEFAULT	198
8.20	GFLIB_ControllerPIpAW	199
8.21	GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PIAW_P_DEFAULT	200
8.22	GFLIB_ControllerPIr	201
8.23	GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_R_DEFAULT	202
8.24	GFLIB_Cos	203
8.25	GFLIB_Hyst	204
8.26	GFLIB_HYST_DEFAULT	205
8.27	GFLIB_IntegratorTR	206
8.28	GFLIB_INTEGRATOR_TR_DEFAULT	207
8.29	GFLIB_Limit	208
8.30	GFLIB_LowerLimit	209
8.31	GFLIB_Lut1D	210
8.32	GFLIB_Ramp	211
8.33	GFLIB_RAMP_DEFAULT	212
8.34	GFLIB_Sign	213
8.35	GFLIB_Sin	214
8.36	GFLIB_Sqrt	215

8.37	GFLIB_Tan	216
8.38	GFLIB_UpperLimit	217
8.39	GMCLIB_Clark	218
8.40	GMCLIB_ClarkInv	219
8.41	GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSM	220
8.42	GMCLIB_DECOUPLINGPMSM_DEFAULT	221
8.43	GMCLIB_ElimDcBusRip	222
8.44	GMCLIB_ELIMDCBUSRIP_DEFAULT	223
8.45	GMCLIB_Park	224
8.46	GMCLIB_ParkInv	225
8.47	GMCLIB_SvmStd	226
8.48	F32SQRT2BY2	227
8.49	F32MULBY2	228
8.50	GMCLIB_VectorLimit	229
8.51	USE_FRAC32_ARITHMETIC	230
8.52	SFRACT_MIN	231
8.53	SFRACT_MAX	232
8.54	FRACT_MIN	233
8.55	FRACT_MAX	234
8.56	INT16_MAX	235
8.57	INT16_MIN	236
8.58	INT32_MAX	237
8.59	INT32_MIN	238
8.60	FRAC16	239
8.61	FRAC32	240
8.62	F16TOINT16	241
8.63	F32TOINT16	242
8.64	F64TOINT16	243
8.65	F16TOINT32	244
8.66	F32TOINT32	245
8.67	F64TOINT32	246
8.68	F16TOINT64	247
8.69	F32TOINT64	248
8.70	F64TOINT64	249
8.71	INT16TOF16	250
8.72	INT16TOF32	251
8.73	INT32TOF16	252
8.74	INT32TOF32	253
8.75	INT64TOF16	254
8.76	INT64TOF32	255
8.77	F16_1_DIVBY_SQRT3	256
8.78	F32_1_DIVBY_SQRT3	257
8.79	F16_SQRT3_DIVBY_2	258
8.80	F32_SQRT3_DIVBY_2	259
8.81	FALSE	260
8.82	TRUE	261



---

# CHAPTER 1: LICENSE AGREEMENT

---

**IMPORTANT.** Read the following Freescale Semiconductor Software License Agreement ("Agreement") completely. By selecting "I accept the terms of the license agreement" and clicking the "Next" button at the end of the page, you indicate that you accept the terms of this Agreement. You may then install the software.

**FREESCALE SEMICONDUCTOR SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT [SOFTWARE FOR: Set of General Math and Motor Control Functions for Cortex M4 Core]**

This is a legal agreement between you (either as an individual or as an authorized representative of your employer) and Freescale Semiconductor, Inc. ("Freescale"). It concerns your rights to use this file and any accompanying written materials produced by Freescale (the "Software"). In consideration for Freescale allowing you to access the Software, you are agreeing to be bound by the terms of this Agreement. If you do not agree to all of the terms of this Agreement, do not install or download the Software. If you change your mind later, stop using the Software and delete all copies of the Software in your possession or control. Any copies of the Software that you have already distributed, where permitted, and do not destroy will continue to be governed by this Agreement. Your prior use will also continue to be governed by this Agreement. Please note that 3rd party products, including but not limited to software ("3rd Party Products"), may be distributed in conjunction with the Software. This Agreement does not apply to those 3rd Party Products, which will be subject to their own licensing terms.

**LICENSE GRANTS.** Your license to the Software and applicable restrictions vary depending on the nature of the Software provided. Review the following grants carefully to ensure your compliance.

**IF SOFTWARE PROVIDED IN SOURCE FORM.** Freescale grants to you the non-exclusive, non-transferable right (1) to use the Software exclusively in conjunction with a development platform from Freescale or other development, prototype, or production platform utilizing at least one Cortex M4 core based processor from Freescale ("Exclusive Use"), (2) to reproduce the Software as necessary to accomplish the Exclusive Use, (3) to prepare derivative works of the Software as necessary to accomplish the Exclusive Use, (4) to distribute the Software and derivative works thereof in object (machine-readable) form only as integrated with a development platform from Freescale or other development, prototype, or production platform utilizing at least one Cortex M4 core based processor from Freescale, and (5) to sublicense to others the right to use the distributed Software. You must prohibit your sublicensees from translating, reverse engineering, decompiling, or disassembling the Software except to the extent applicable law specifically prohibits such restriction. If you violate any of the terms or restrictions of this Agreement, Freescale may immediately terminate this Agreement, and require that you stop using and delete all copies of the Software in your possession or control.

**IF SOFTWARE PROVIDED IN OBJECT FORM ONLY.** Freescale grants to you the non-exclusive, non-transferable right (1) to use the Software exclusively in conjunction with a development platform from Freescale or other development, prototype, or production platform utilizing at least one Cortex M4 core based processor from Freescale ("Exclusive Use"), (2)

to reproduce the Software as necessary to accomplish the Exclusive Use, (3) to distribute the Software only as integrated with a development platform from Freescale or other development, prototype, or production platform utilizing at least one Cortex M4 core based processor from Freescale, and (4) to sublicense to others the right to use the distributed Software. The Software is provided to you only in object (machine-readable) form. You may exercise the rights above only with respect to such object form. You may not translate, reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble the Software except to the extent applicable law specifically prohibits such restriction. In addition, you must prohibit your sublicensees from doing the same. If you violate any of the terms or restrictions of this Agreement, Freescale may immediately terminate this Agreement, and require that you stop using and delete all copies of the Software in your possession or control.

**FOR TOOLS.** Freescale grants to you the non-exclusive, non-transferable right (1) to use the Software exclusively in conjunction with a development platform from Freescale ("Exclusive Use"), and (2) to reproduce the Software. The Software is provided to you only in object (machine-readable) form. You may not distribute or sublicense the Software to others. You may exercise the rights above only with respect to such object form. You may not translate, reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble the Software except to the extent applicable law specifically prohibits such restriction. If you violate any of the terms or restrictions of this Agreement, Freescale may immediately terminate this Agreement, and require that you stop using and delete all copies of the Software in your possession or control.

**COPYRIGHT.** The Software is licensed to you, not sold. Freescale owns the Software, and United States copyright laws and international treaty provisions protect the Software. Therefore, you must treat the Software like any other copyrighted material (e.g., a book or musical recording). You may not use or copy the Software for any other purpose than what is described in this Agreement. Except as expressly provided herein, Freescale does not grant to you any express or implied rights under any Freescale or third party patents, copyrights, trademarks, or trade secrets. Additionally, you must reproduce and apply any copyright or other proprietary rights notices included on or embedded in the Software to any copies or derivative works made thereof, in whole or in part, if any.

**SUPPORT.** Freescale is NOT obligated to provide any support, upgrades or new releases of the Software. If you wish, you may contact Freescale and report problems and provide suggestions regarding the Software. Freescale has no obligation whatsoever to respond in any way to such a problem report or suggestion. Freescale may make changes to the Software at any time, without any obligation to notify or provide updated versions of the Software to you.

**LIMITED WARRANTY ON MEDIA.** Freescale warrants that the media on which the Software is recorded will be free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use for a period of 90 days from the date of purchase as evidenced by a copy of the receipt. Freescale's entire liability and your exclusive remedy under this warranty will be replacement of the defective media returned to Freescale with a copy of the receipt. Freescale will have no responsibility to replace any media damaged by accident, abuse or misapplication. This warranty extends only to you and may be invoked only by you for your customers. Freescale will not accept warranty returns from your customers.

**NO ADDITIONAL WARRANTY. EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY ON MEDIA PROVIDED ABOVE, THE SOFTWARE AND 3RD PARTY PRODUCTS, IF ANY, ARE PROVIDED "AS IS". YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR 3RD PARTY PRODUCTS IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE OR ANY 3RD PARTY PRODUCT PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU (AND NOT FREESCALE OR ANY FREESCALE REPRESENTATIVE) ASSUME**

THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. FREESCALE EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE AND 3RD PARTY PRODUCTS, WHETHER SUCH WARRANTIES ARE EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. YOU EXPRESSLY ASSUME ALL LIABILITIES AND RISKS, FOR ANYONE'S USE OR OPERATION OF ANY APPLICATION PROGRAMS YOU MAY CREATE WITH THE SOFTWARE.

**INDEMNITY.** Freescale will defend, at its expense, any suits asserted against you based upon a claim that the Software as provided by Freescale infringes a U.S. patent or copyright or misappropriates a trade secret, and pay costs and damages finally awarded based upon such suit, if you: (1) promptly notify Freescale in writing as soon as reasonably practicable after you first become aware of the claim of infringement or misappropriation, but in no event later than 15 days of the date on which you first received notice of the claim; and (2) at Freescale's request and expense, give Freescale sole control of the suit and all requested assistance for defense of the suit. Freescale will not be liable for any settlement made without its written consent. If the use or sale of any Software component program licensed under this Agreement is enjoined as a result of such suit, Freescale at its option and at no expense to you, will: (1) obtain for you the right to use such program consistent with the license granted in this Agreement for the affected program; (2) substitute an equivalent program and extend this indemnity thereto; or (3) accept the return of the program and refund the portion of the license fee for such component program less reasonable charge for prior use. If an infringement or misappropriation claim related to the Software is alleged prior to completion of delivery, Freescale has the right to decline to make further shipments notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement. This indemnity does not extend to any suit based upon any infringement or alleged infringement arising from any program furnished by Freescale that is: (1) altered in any way by you or any third party if the alleged infringement would not have occurred but for such alteration; (2) combined with any other products or elements not furnished by Freescale if the alleged infringement would not have occurred but for such combination; (3) designed or manufactured in accordance with your designs, specifications or instructions if the alleged infringement would not have occurred but for such designs, specifications or instructions; or (4) designed or manufactured in compliance with standards issued by any public or private standards body if the alleged infringement would not have occurred but for compliance with such standards. In no event will Freescale indemnify you or be liable in any way for royalties payable based on a per use basis, or any royalty basis other than a reasonable royalty based upon revenue derived by Freescale from your license of the Software.

THE INDEMNITY PROVIDED IN THIS SECTION IS THE SOLE, EXCLUSIVE, AND ENTIRE LIABILITY OF FREESCALE AND THE REMEDIES PROVIDED IN THIS SECTION SHALL BE YOUR EXCLUSIVE REMEDIES AGAINST FREESCALE FOR PATENT OR COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT OR TRADE SECRET MISAPPROPRIATION AND IS PROVIDED IN LIEU OF ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY IN REGARD THERETO, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE WARRANTY AGAINST INFRINGEMENT SPECIFIED IN THE UNIFORM COMMERCIAL CODE.

**LIMITATION OF LIABILITY.** IN NO EVENT WILL FREESCALE BE LIABLE, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE, FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR ANY LOSS OF USE, LOSS OF TIME, INCONVENIENCE, COMMERCIAL LOSS, OR LOST PROFITS, SAVINGS, OR REVENUES TO THE FULL EXTENT SUCH MAY BE DIS-

**CLAIMED BY LAW.**

**COMPLIANCE WITH LAWS; EXPORT RESTRICTIONS.** You must use the Software in accordance with all applicable U.S. laws, regulations and statutes. You agree that neither you nor your licensees (if any) intend to or will, directly or indirectly, export or transmit the Software to any country in violation of U.S. export restrictions.

**GOVERNMENT USE.** Use of the Software and any corresponding documentation, if any, is provided with **RESTRICTED RIGHTS**. Use, duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of The Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.227-7013 or subparagraphs (c)(1) and (2) of the Commercial Computer Software–Restricted Rights at 48 CFR 52.227-19, as applicable. Manufacturer is Freescale Semiconductor, Inc., 6501 William Cannon Drive West, Austin, TX, 78735.

**HIGH RISK ACTIVITIES.** You acknowledge that the Software is not fault tolerant and is not designed, manufactured or intended by Freescale for incorporation into products intended for use or resale in on-line control equipment in hazardous, dangerous to life or potentially life-threatening environments requiring fail-safe performance, such as in the operation of nuclear facilities, aircraft navigation or communication systems, air traffic control, direct life support machines or weapons systems.

**CHOICE OF LAW; VENUE; LIMITATIONS.** You agree that the statutes and laws of the United States and the State of Texas, USA, without regard to conflicts of laws principles, will apply to all matters relating to this Agreement or the Software, and you agree that any litigation will be subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the state or federal courts in Texas, USA. You agree that regardless of any statute or law to the contrary, any claim or cause of action arising out of or related to this Agreement or the Software must be filed within one (1) year after such claim or cause of action arose or be forever barred.

**PRODUCT LABELING.** You are not authorized to use any Freescale trademarks, brand names, or logos.

**ENTIRE AGREEMENT.** This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between you and Freescale regarding the subject matter of this Agreement, and supersedes all prior communications, negotiations, understandings, agreements or representations, either written or oral, if any. This Agreement may only be amended in written form, executed by you and Freescale.

**SEVERABILITY.** If any provision of this Agreement is held for any reason to be invalid or unenforceable, then the remaining provisions of this Agreement will be unimpaired and, unless a modification or replacement of the invalid or unenforceable provision is further held to deprive you or Freescale of a material benefit, in which case the Agreement will immediately terminate, the invalid or unenforceable provision will be replaced with a provision that is valid and enforceable and that comes closest to the intention underlying the invalid or unenforceable provision.

**NO WAIVER.** The waiver by Freescale of any breach of any provision of this Agreement will not operate or be construed as a waiver of any other or a subsequent breach of the same or a different provision.

# CHAPTER 2: INTRODUCTION

## 2.1 MC Library Architecture Overview

The purpose of this document is to describe the MCLIB for the Freescale Cortex M4 core-based microcontrollers. It describes the components of the library, its behaviour and interaction, the API, and steps needed for integration of the library to the project.

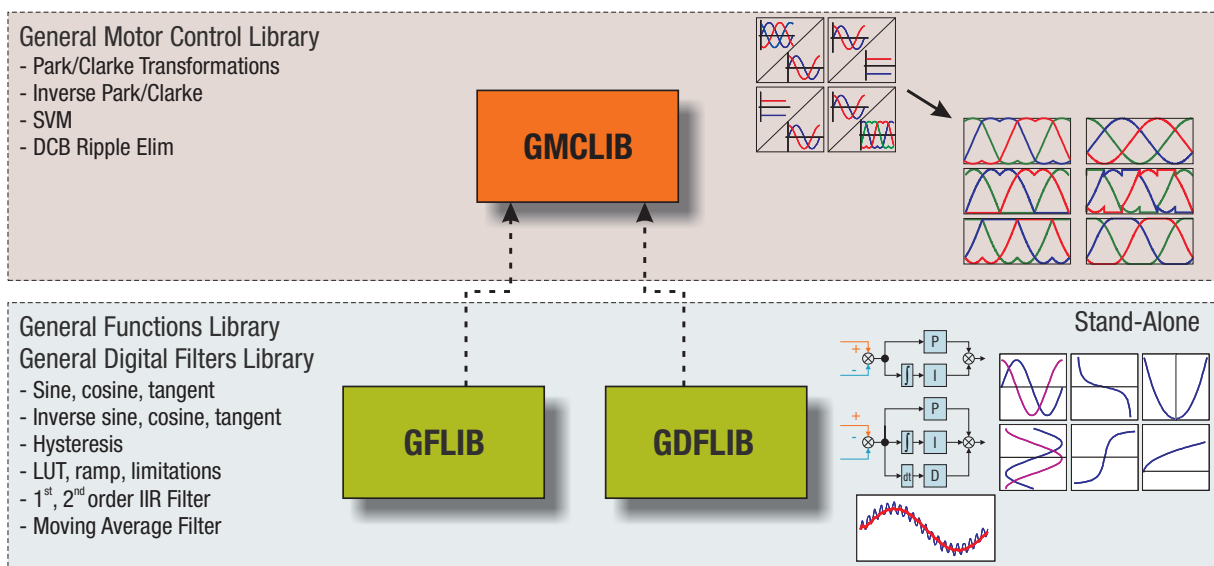


Figure 2-1: MCLIB components structure

The MCLIB consists of three sub libraries, functionally connected as depicted in Figure 2-1. The set of functions consists of following groups:

- General Function Library (GFLIB) - basic trigonometric and general maths functions such as sin, cos, tan, hyst, limit, and so on.
- General Digital Filters Library (GDFLIB) - digital IIR and FIR filters designed to be used in a motor control application
- General Motor Control Library (GMCLIB) - standard algorithms used for motor control such as Clarke/Park transformations, Space Vector Modulation, and so on.

As can be seen in Figure 2-1, the MCLIB libraries form the layer architecture where only the GFLIB and GDLIB libraries are completely independent and can stand-alone. The GMCLIB library depends on GFLIB and GDFLIB, can not stand-alone.

## 2.2 Supported Compilers

The library was built and tested using three compiler:

- IAR Embedded Workbench Compiler
- Metrowerks CodeWarrior Compiler
- Keil uVision Compiler

The interfaces to the algorithms included in this library have been combined into a single public interface header file for each respective sub-library, that is: `gflib.h`, `gdflib.h`, and `gmclib.h`. This was done in order to simplify the number of files required for inclusion by application programs. See the specific algorithm sections of this document for details on the software Application Programming Interface (API), definitions, and functionality provided for the individual algorithms.

## 2.3 Installation

The MCLIB is delivered as a single executable file. To install the MCLIB on a user computer, run the installation file and follow these steps. Highlighted "ReleaseID" identifies the actual release number, which is Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4.

1. Accept the license agreement.

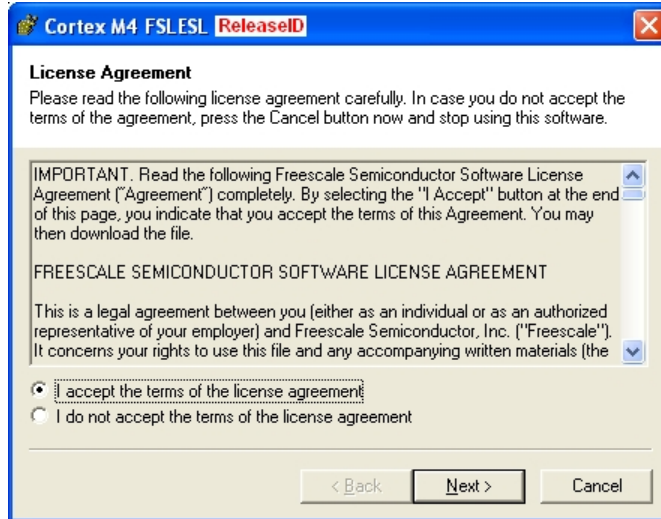


Figure 2-2: Step 1.

2. Select the destination directory.

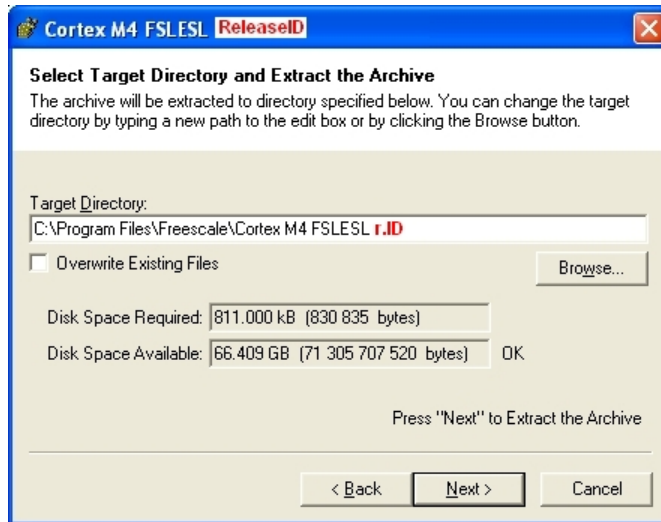


Figure 2-3: Step 2.

3. Select "Finish" to end the installation.

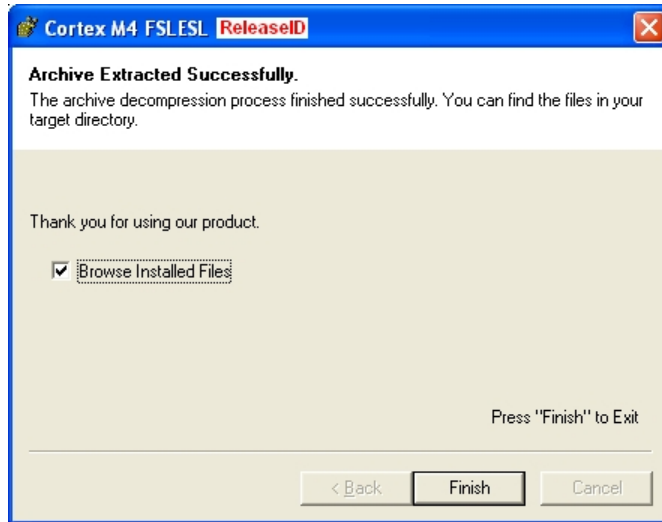


Figure 2-4: Step 3.



## 2.4 Library File Structure

After a successful installation, the Motor Control Library is placed by default into the: "C:\Program Files\Freescale\Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4" subfolder. This folder will contain other nested subfolders and files required by the Motor Control Library, as shown in Figure 2-5.

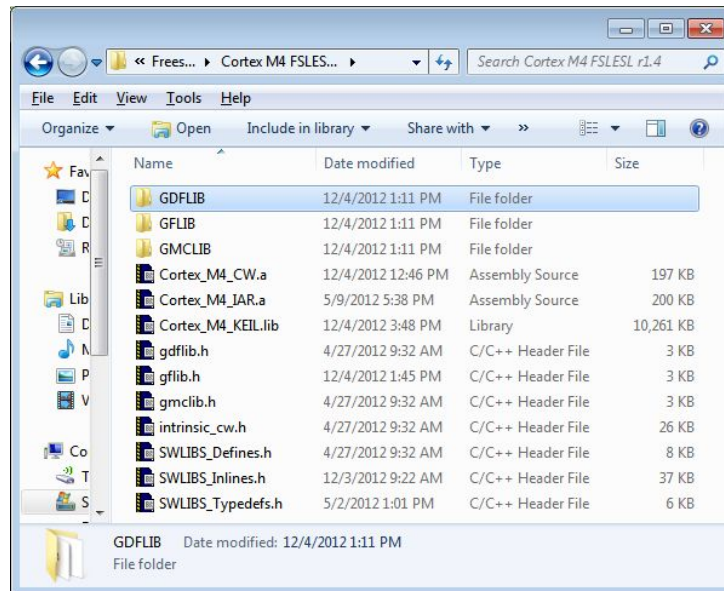


Figure 2-5: MCLIB directory structure.

The installed directories/files include:

- Three directories - containing header files for each function
- Header files (\*.h) which each contain the list of functions from relevant libraries (such as gdflib, gflib and gmclib.h). SWLIBS header files include definitions and math functions
- Library files (\*.a or \*.lib) - containing all compiled function algorithms
- license.txt contains license agreement

In order to integrate the Motor Control Library into a new Cortex M4 core based project, follow the steps described in Section 2.5 or 2.6.

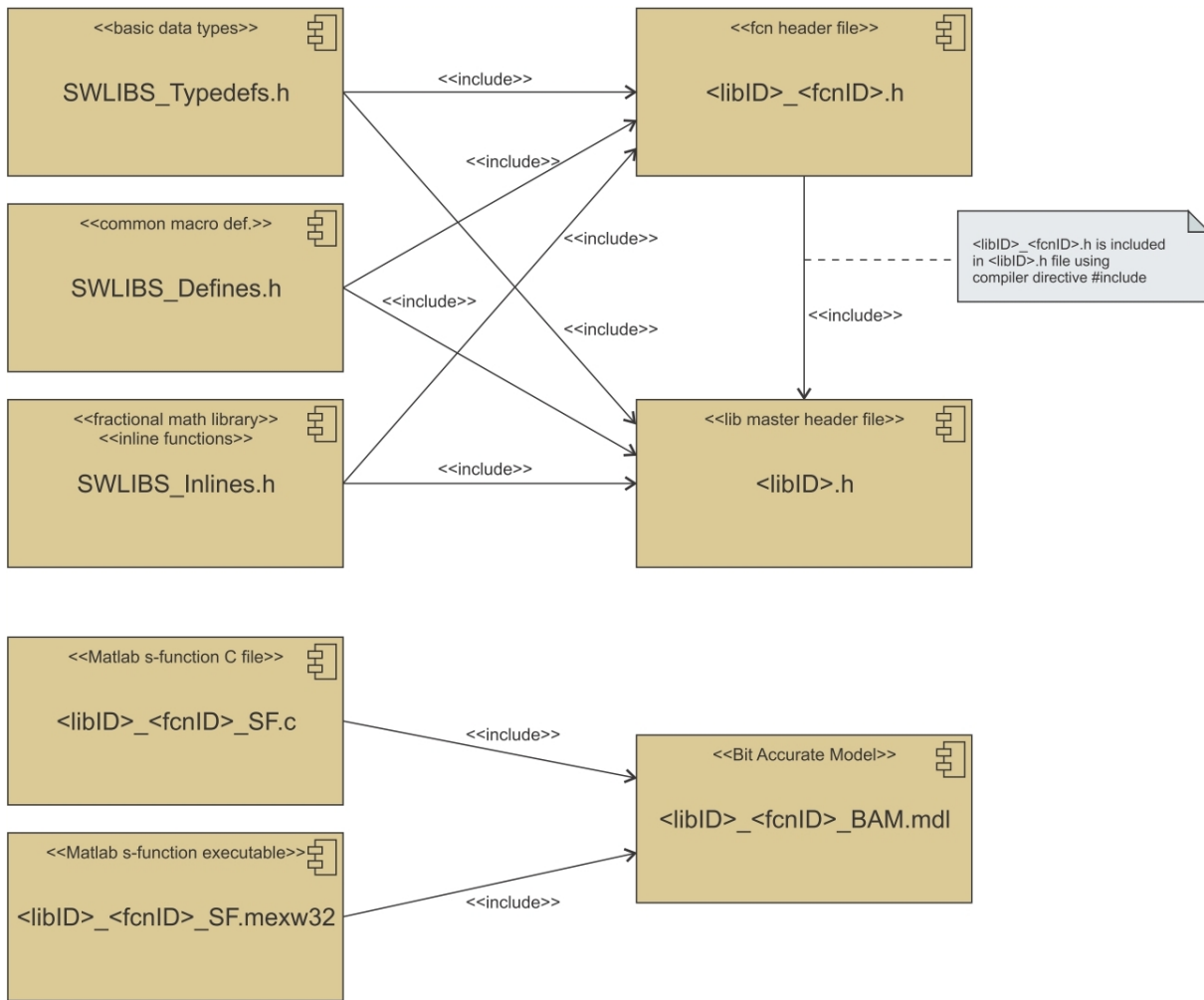


Figure 2-6: MCLIB file structure.

## 2.5 Library Integration into an IAR Embedded Workbench IDE

The Motor Control Library is added into an IAR Embedded Workbench IDE project by performing the following steps:

1. Open a new empty C project in the IAR Embedded Workbench IDE.
2. Add a new group by right-clicking inside the workspace section, then choose *Add > Add Group*. Insert name GDFLIB. Repeat to create the next two groups: GFLIB, GMCLIB.

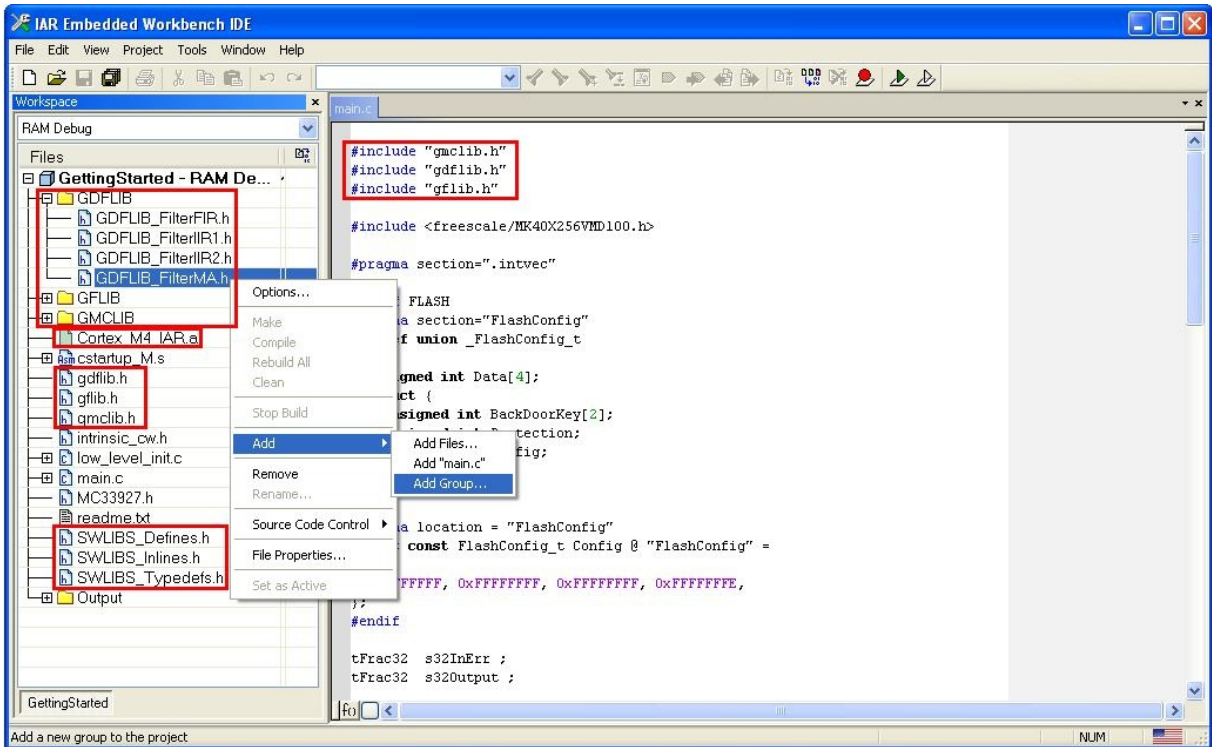


Figure 2-7: Project build

3. Open the directory where you installed the libraries. The default path is "C:\Program Files\Freescale\Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4". Add all files into each group by right click then choosing *Add > Add files*. Select all files from each subdirectory (GDFLIB, GFLIB, or GMCLIB). Do not forget to add header files: *gdflib.h*, *gflib.h* and *gmclib.h* to the root level for each library. Also add the library file *Cortex\_M4\_IAR.a*. All files added into IAR are outlined in red in Figure 2-11.
4. Write pre processor directives *#include "gdflib.h"*, *#include "gflib.h"* and *#include "gmclib.h"* at the beginning of the *main.c* file.
5. Set up the paths for header files by choosing *Project > Options* from the menu (or press Alt+F7). Choose the category *C/C++ Compiler* and select the *Preprocessor* tab. If the default installation path was used insert the following lines:
 

```
c:\Program Files\Freescale\Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4\
c:\Program Files\Freescale\Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4\GDFLIB\
```

c:\Program Files\Freescale\Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4\GFLIB\  
 c:\Program Files\Freescale\Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4\GMCLIB\  
 If the default installation path was not use, replace it with you own installation path.

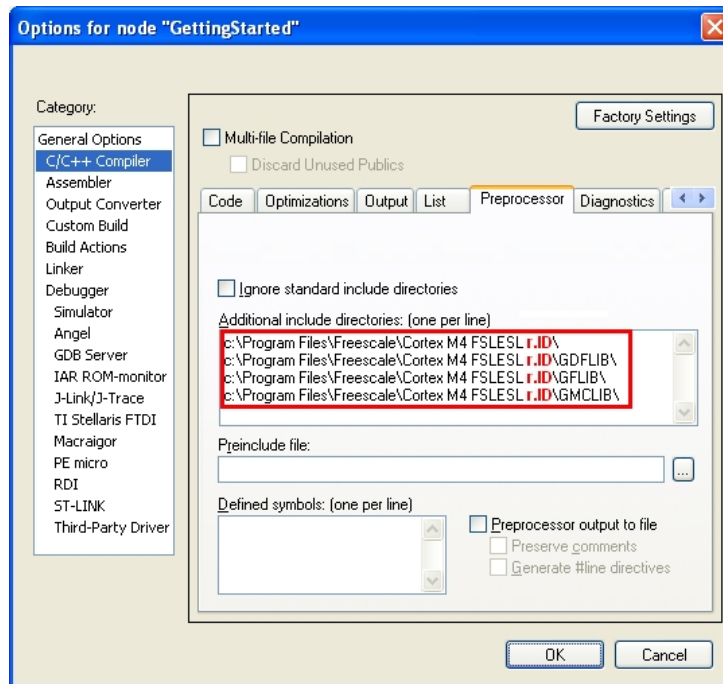


Figure 2-8: Project options.

6. The Motor Control Library is now ready for use.

## 2.6 Library Integration into an Metrowerks CodeWarrior Development Studio

The Motor Control Library is added into a Metrowerks CodeWarrior Development Studio project by performing the following steps:

1. Open a new empty C project in the CodeWarrior Development Studio.

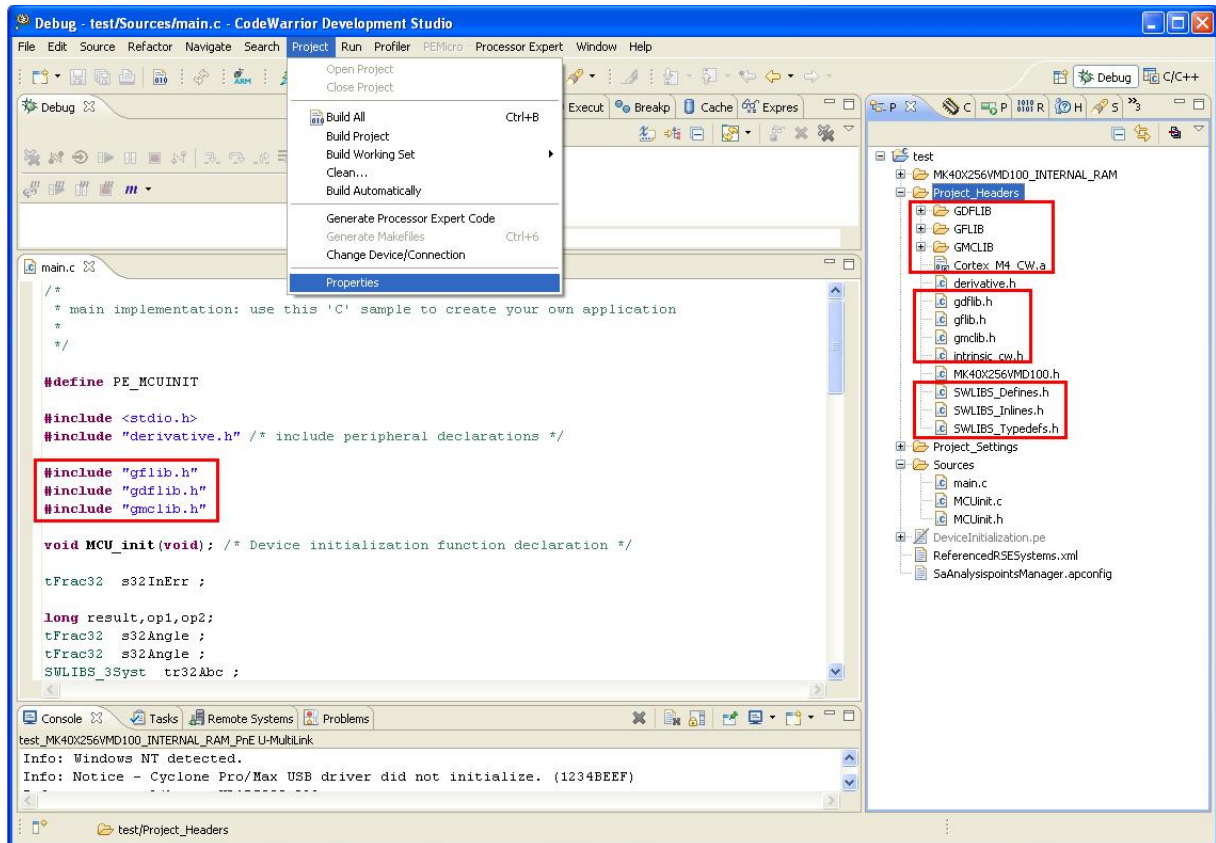


Figure 2-9: Project build.

2. Open the directory where you installed the libraries. The default path is "C:\Program Files\Freescale\Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4". Drag and drop files into the workspace from each subdirectory (GDFLIB, GFLIB, or GMCLIB). Do not forget to add header files: *gdflib.h*, *gflib.h*, and *gmclib.h* to the root level for each library. Also add the library file: *Cortex\_M4\_CW.a*. All files added into CW are marked outlined in red in Figure 2-11.
3. Write pre processor directives *#include "gdflib.h"*, *#include "gflib.h"*, and *#include "gmclib.h"* at the beginning of the *main.c* file.
4. Set up the paths for header files and the library file by choosing *Project > Properties* from the menu. Expand setting *C/C++ General*, choose the subsetting *Paths and Symbols*, select the *Includes* tab, and select *C Source File*. If the default installation path was used, click *Add...* and insert the following lines one at the time:

**Set of General Math and Motor Control Functions for Cortex M4 Core, Rev. 1.4**

## Library Integration into an Metrowerks CodeWarrior Development Studio

c:\Program Files\Freescale\Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4\  
 c:\Program Files\Freescale\Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4\GDFLIB\  
 c:\Program Files\Freescale\Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4\GFLIB\  
 c:\Program Files\Freescale\Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4\GMCLIB\  
 If the default installation path was not use, replace it with you own installation path.

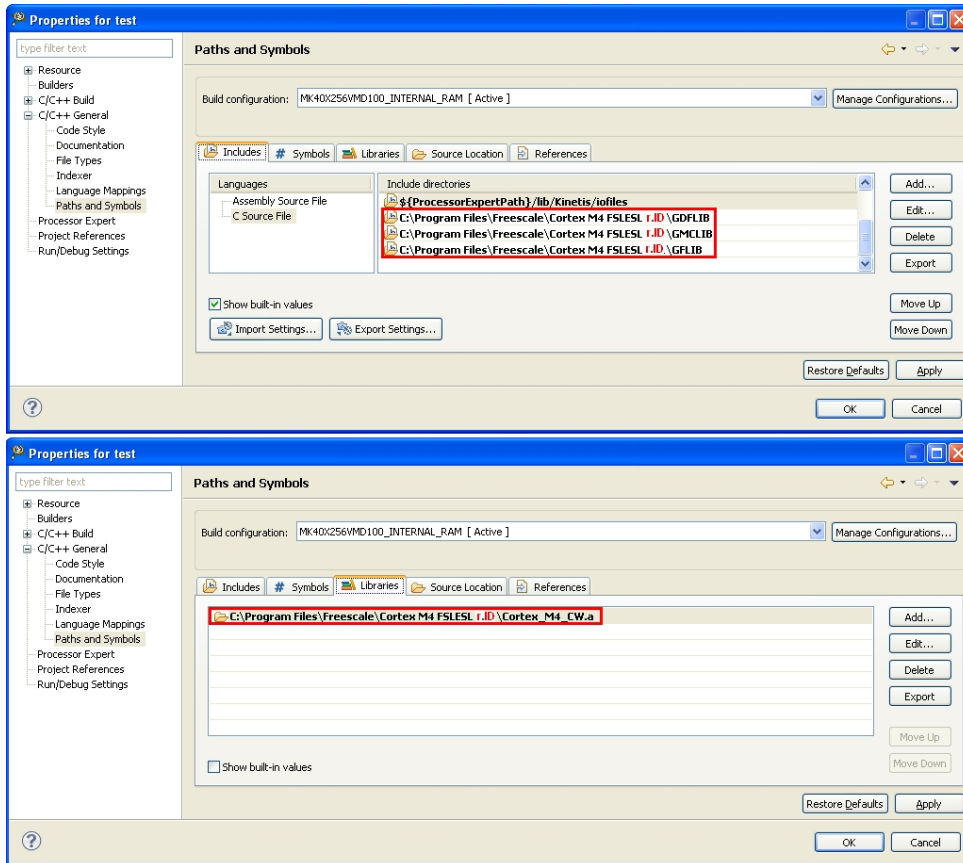


Figure 2-10: Project options.

5. Select the *Libraries* tab and click *Add....* Write:  
 c:\Program Files\Freescale\Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4\GDFLIB\Cortex\_M4\_CW.a.  
 All modified items are marked outlined in red in Figure 2-11.
6. The Motor Control Library is now ready for use.

## Library Integration into a Keil uVision IDE

### 2.7 Library Integration into a Keil uVision IDE

The Motor Control Library is added into a Keil uVision IDE project by performing the following steps:

1. Open a new empty C project in the Keil uVision IDE.
2. Add a new group by right-clicking inside the Project section, then choose *Add > Add Group...* Insert name GDFLIB. Repeat to create the next two groups: GFLIB, GMCLIB.

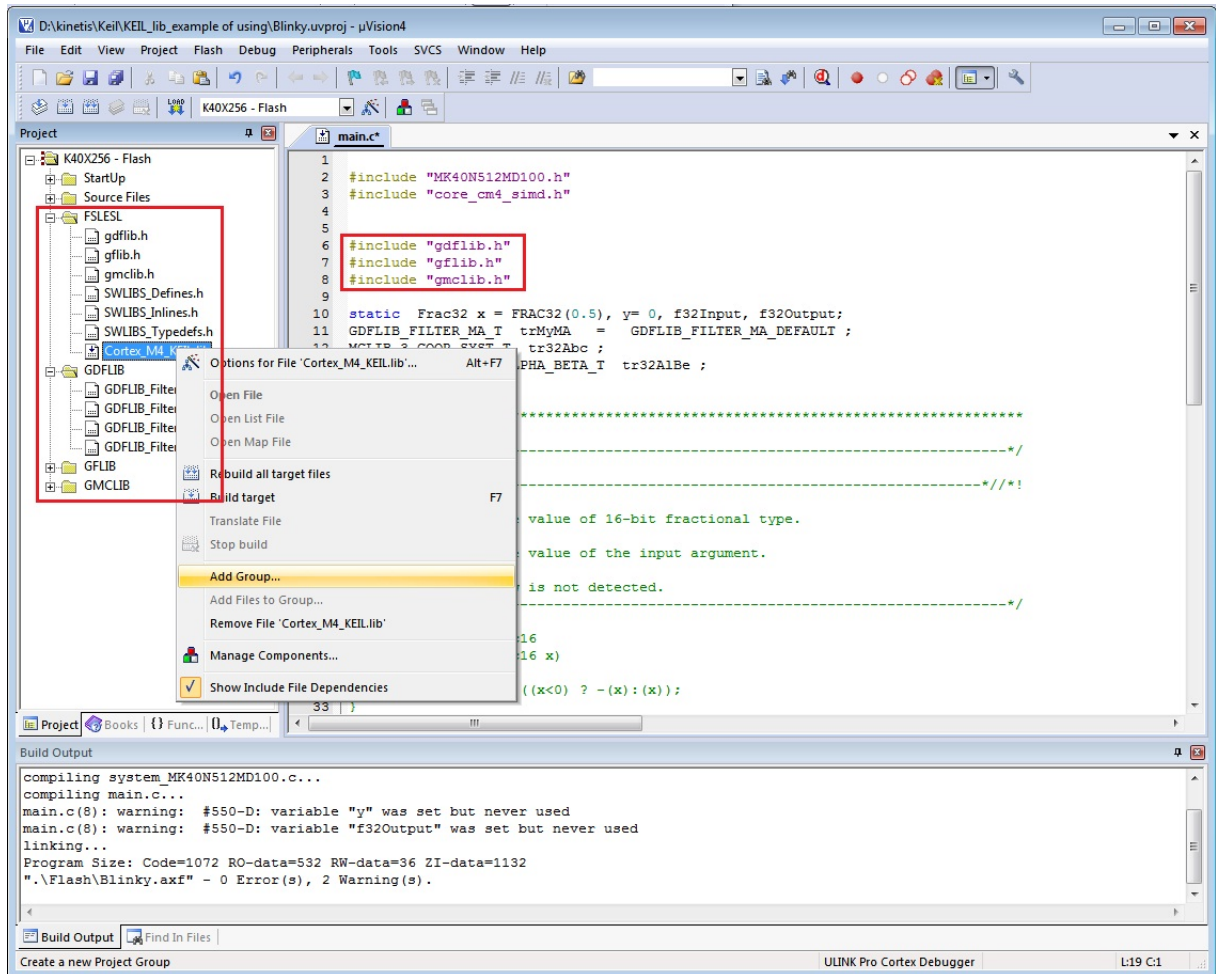


Figure 2-11: Project build

3. Open the directory where you installed the libraries. The default path is "C:\Program Files\Freescale\Cortex M4 FSLESL r1.4". Copy all files and directories from this location to your project directory (for example use the directory named FSLESL) because there must not be the space in the file paths. Add all files from your project directory (FSLESL) into each group by right click then choosing *Add > Add Files to Group...* Select all files from each subdirectory (GDFLIB, GFLIB, or GMCLIB). Do not forget to add header files: *gdflib.h*, *gflib.h* and *gmclib.h* to the root level for each library. Also add the library file *Cortex\_M4\_KEIL.lib*. All files added into KEIL are outlined in red in Figure 2-11.

#### Set of General Math and Motor Control Functions for Cortex M4 Core, Rev. 1.4

4. Write pre processor directives `#include "gdflib.h"`, `#include "gflib.h"` and `#include "gm-clib.h"` at the beginning of the `main.c` file.
5. Set up the paths for header files by choosing `Project > Options for Target` from the menu (or press `Alt+F7`). Choose the bookmark `C/C++` and click on the button "... " on the end of line with label `Include Paths`. A new window will appear then for each path click on left button named `New (Insert)`. If the folder `FSLESL` is used for the library source files insert the following lines:
  - .\FSLESL
  - .\FSLESL\GDFLIB
  - .\FSLESL\GFLIB
  - .\FSLESL\GMCLIB
 If the `FSLESL` directory was not use, replace it with you own folder name used.

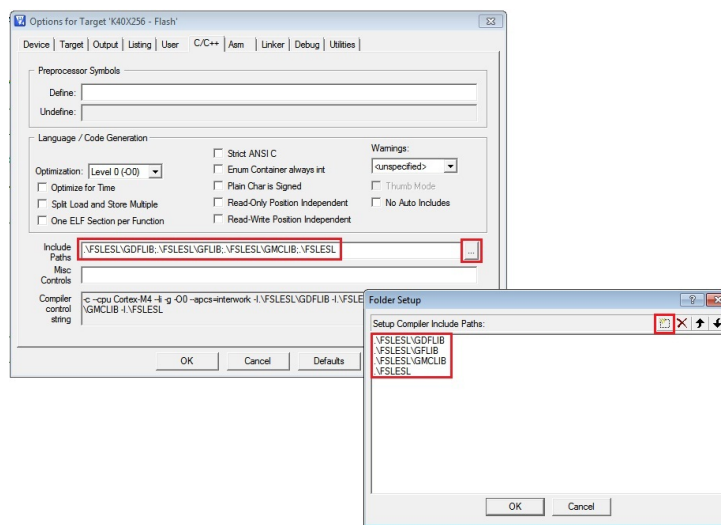


Figure 2-12: Project options.

6. The Motor Control Library is now ready for use.



# CHAPTER 3: GFLIB

## 3.1 Function API Overview

- `Frac32 GFLIB_Sin ( Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_SINTLR_T *const pParam)`  
*Sine function - Taylor polynomial approximation*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_Cos ( Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_COSTLR_T *const pParam)`  
*Cosine function - Taylor polynomial approximation*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_Tan ( Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_TANTLR_T *const pParam)`  
*Tangent function - Piece-wise polynomial approximation*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_Asin ( Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_ASIN_TAYLOR_T *const pParam)`  
*Arcsine function - Piece-wise polynomial approximation*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_Acos ( Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_ACOS_TAYLOR_T *const pParam)`  
*Arccosine function - Piece-wise polynomial approximation*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_Atan ( Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_ATAN_TAYLOR_T *const pParam)`  
*Arctangent function - Taylor polynomial approximation*
- `Word32 GFLIB_AtanYX ( Word32 w32InY, Word32 w32InX)`  
*Calculates the angle between the positive x-axis and the direction of a vector given by the (x, y) coordinates*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_AtanYXShifted ( Frac32 f32InY, Frac32 f32InX, const GFLIB_ATANYXSHIFTED_T *const pParam)`  
*Calculates the angle of two sine waves shifted in phase one to each other*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_Sqrt ( Frac32 f32In)`  
*Square root function*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_Sign ( Frac32 f32In)`  
*Sign function*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_Lut1D ( Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_LUT1D_T *const pParam)`  
*Performs a linear interpolation over an arbitrary data set*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_Hyst ( Frac32 f32In, GFLIB_HYST_T * pParam)`  
*Hysteresis function*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_Ramp ( Frac32 f32In, GFLIB_RAMP_T * pParam)`  
*Calculates the up/down ramp with the step increment/decrement defined in the pParam*

Set of General Math and Motor Control Functions for Cortex M4 Core, Rev. 1.4

*structure*

- `Frac32 GFLIB_Limit ( Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_LIMIT_T *const pParam)`  
*Limits the input value to the defined upper and lower limits*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_LowerLimit ( Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_LOWERLIMIT_T *const pParam)`  
*Limits the input value by the defined lower limit*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_UpperLimit ( Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_UPPERLIMIT_T *const pParam)`  
*Limits the input value by the defined upper limit*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_IntegratorTR ( Frac32 f32In, GFLIB_INTEGRATOR_TR_T * pParam)`  
*Calculates a discrete implementation of the integrator (sum), discretized using a trapezoidal (Bilinear) transformation*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_ControllerPIr ( Frac32 f32InErr, GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_R_T * pParam)`  
*Recurrent form Proportional-Integral controller without integrator anti-windup functionality*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_ControllerPIp ( Frac32 f32InErr, GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_P_T * pParam)`  
*Calculates the parallel form of the Proportional-Integral (PI) controller*
- `Frac32 GFLIB_ControllerPIpAW ( Frac32 f32InErr, GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PIAW_P_T * pParam)`  
*Calculates the parallel form of the Proportional-Integral (PI) controller with implemented integral anti-windup functionality*

## 3.2 GFLIB\_Sin

### 3.2.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_SinANSIC(Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_SINTLR_T *const pParam)
```

### 3.2.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_Sin(w32In) \
    GFLIB_SinANSIC(w32In, &gflibSinCoef)
```

### 3.2.3 Arguments

Table 3-1: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
const <a href="#">GFLIB_SINTLR_T</a> *const	pParam	in	Pointer to an array of Taylor coefficients. Using the function alias <a href="#">GFLIB_Sin</a> , default coefficients are used.
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32In	in	Input argument is a 32-bit number that contains an angle in radians between $[-\pi, \pi)$ normalized between $[-1, 1)$ .

### 3.2.4 Return

The function returns the sine of the input argument as a fixed point 32-bit number, normalized between  $[-1, 1)$ .

### 3.2.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_SinANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible source code implementation, can be called via the function alias [GFLIB\\_Sin](#).

The [GFLIB\\_Sin](#) function provides a computational method for calculation of a standard trigonometric *sine* function  $\sin(x)$ , using the 9th order Taylor polynomial approximation. The Taylor polynomial approximation of a *sine* function is described as follows:

$$\sin(x) = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \frac{x^9}{9!} + \dots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} \quad (3.1)$$

where  $x$  is the input angle.

The 9th order polynomial approximation was chosen for its ability to achieve the best ratio between calculation accuracy and speed of calculation. The goal is to have the output error within 3LSB on the upper 16 bits of the 32-bit result. Because the [GFLIB\\_Sin](#) function is implemented with consideration to fixed point fractional arithmetic, all variables are normalized

to fit into the  $[-1, 1)$  range. Therefore, in order to cast the fractional value of the input angle  $w32In$   $[-1, 1)$  into the correct range  $[-\pi, \pi)$ , the input  $w32In$  must be multiplied by  $\pi$ . The fixed point fractional implementation of the **GFLIB\_Sin** function, using 9th order Taylor approximation, is given as follows:

$$\sin(\pi \cdot w32In) = (\pi \cdot w32In) - \frac{(\pi \cdot w32In)^3}{3!} + \frac{(\pi \cdot w32In)^5}{5!} - \frac{(\pi \cdot w32In)^7}{7!} + \frac{(\pi \cdot w32In)^9}{9!} \quad (3.2)$$

The 9th order polynomial approximation of the sine function has a high accuracy in the range  $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$  of the argument, but in wider ranges the calculation error quickly increases. To minimize the error without having to use a higher order polynomial, the symmetry of the sine function  $\sin(x) = \sin(\pi - x)$  is utilized. Therefore, the input argument is transferred to be always in the range  $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$  and the Taylor polynomial is calculated only in the range of the argument  $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ . To make calculations more precise (because in calculations the value used is the input angle rounded to a 16-bit fractional number), the given argument value  $w32In$  (that is to be transferred into the range  $[-0.5, 0.5)$  due to the *sine* function symmetry) is shifted by 1 bit to the left (multiplied by 2). Then, the value of  $w32In^2$ , used in the calculations, is in the range  $[-1, 1)$  instead of  $[-0.25, 0.25)$ . Shifting the input value by 1 bit to the left will increase the accuracy of the calculated  $\sin(\pi \cdot w32In)$  function. Implementing such a scale on the approximation function described by Equation (3.2), results in the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(w32In \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2}) &= \dots \\ \dots &= \left( \frac{(w32In \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2})}{2} - \frac{(w32In \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2})^3}{3! \cdot 2} + \frac{(w32In \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2})^5}{5! \cdot 2} - \frac{(w32In \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2})^7}{7! \cdot 2} + \frac{(w32In \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2})^9}{9! \cdot 2} \right) \cdot 2 \end{aligned} \quad (3.3)$$

Equation (3.3) can be further rewritten into the following form:

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(w32In \cdot \pi) &= (w32In \cdot 2)(a_1 + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(a_2 + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(a_3 + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(a_4 + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(a_5)))))) \cdot 2 \end{aligned} \quad (3.4)$$

where  $a_1 \dots a_5$  are coefficients of the approximation polynomial, which are calculated as follows (represented as 32-bit signed fractional numbers):

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= \frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})}{2} = 0.785398163397448 \Rightarrow \frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})}{2} \cdot 2^{31} = 0x6487ED51 \\ a_3 &= -\frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^3}{3! \cdot 2} = -0.322982048753123 \Rightarrow -\frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^3}{3! \cdot 2} \cdot 2^{31} = 0xD6A88634 \\ a_5 &= \frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^5}{5! \cdot 2} = 0.0398463131230835 \Rightarrow \frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^5}{5! \cdot 2} \cdot 2^{31} = 0x0519AF1A \\ a_7 &= -\frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^7}{7! \cdot 2} = -0.00234087706765934 \Rightarrow -\frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^7}{7! \cdot 2} \cdot 2^{31} = 0xFFB34B4D \\ a_9 &= \frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^9}{9! \cdot 2} = 8.02205923936799e^{-005} \Rightarrow \frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^9}{9! \cdot 2} \cdot 2^{31} = 0x0002A0F0 \end{aligned} \quad (3.5)$$

Therefore, the resulting equation has the following form:

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(w32In \cdot \pi) &= (w32In \cdot 2)(0x6487ED51 + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(0xD6A88634 + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(0x0519AF1A + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(0xFFB34B4D + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(0x0002A0F0)))))) \cdot 2 \end{aligned} \quad (3.6)$$

## GFLIB\_Sin

Figure 3-1 depicts a floating point *sine* function generated from Matlab and the approximated value of the *sine* function obtained from `GFLIB_Sin`, as well as their difference. The course of calculation accuracy as a function of the input angle can be observed from this figure. The achieved accuracy with consideration to the 9th order Taylor approximation and described fixed point scaling, is less than 2LSB on the upper 16 bits of the 32-bit result.

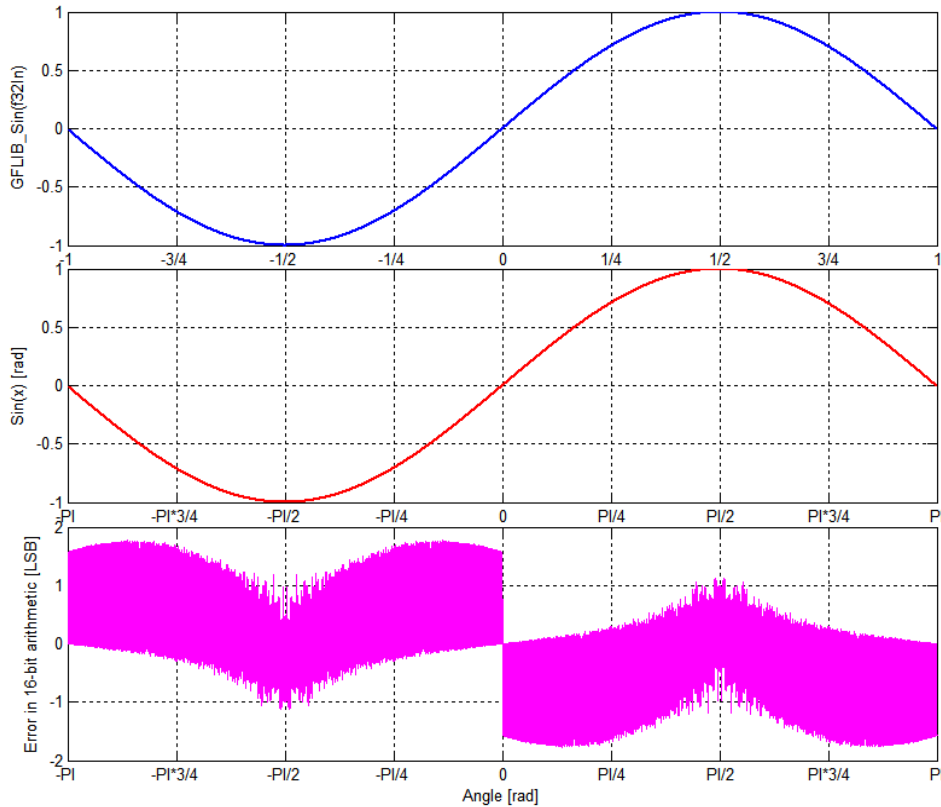


Figure 3-1: `sin(x)` versus `GFLIB_Sin(w32In)`

### 3.2.6 Note

The input angle (`w32In`) is normalized into the range  $[-1, 1)$ . The polynomial coefficients are stored in a locally-defined structure with five members, the call of which is masked by the function alias `GFLIB_Sin`. The polynomial coefficients can be calculated by the user, and in which case the full `GFLIB_SinANSIC` function call with a pointer to the newly-defined coefficients shall be used instead of the function alias.

### 3.2.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.2.8 Code Example

```

#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32Angle;
Frac32 f32Output;

void main(void)
{
    // input angle = 0.5 => pi/2
    f32Angle = FRAC32(0.5);

    // output should be 0x7FFF8000
    f32Output = GFLIB_Sin(f32Angle);
}

```

### 3.2.9 Performance

Table 3-2: [GFLIB\\_Sin](#) function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	88/88/96
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	55/45/40
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	55/45/40

### 3.3 GFLIB\_Cos

#### 3.3.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_CosANSIC(Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_COSTLR_T *const pParam)
```

#### 3.3.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_Cos(w32In) \
    GFLIB_CosANSIC(w32In, &gflibCosCoef)
```

#### 3.3.3 Arguments

Table 3-3: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
const <a href="#">GFLIB_COSTLR_T</a> *const	pParam	in	Pointer to an array of Taylor coefficients. Using the function alias <a href="#">GFLIB_Cos</a> , default coefficients are used.
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32In	in	Input argument is a 32-bit number that contains an angle in radians between $[-\pi, \pi)$ normalized between $[-1, 1)$ .

#### 3.3.4 Return

The function returns the cos of the input argument as a fixed point 32-bit number, normalized between  $[-1, 1)$ .

#### 3.3.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_CosANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible source code implementation, can be called via the function alias [GFLIB\\_Cos](#).

The [GFLIB\\_Cos](#) function provides a computational method for calculation of a standard trigonometric *cosine* function  $\cos(x)$ , using the 9th order Taylor polynomial approximation of the *sine* function. The following two equations describe the chosen approach of calculating the *cosine* function:

$$\cos(w32In) = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + w32In\right) = \sin(x) \tag{3.7}$$

$$\sin(x) = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \frac{x^9}{9!} + \dots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} \tag{3.8}$$

The 9th order polynomial approximation is chosen as sufficient an order to achieve the best ratio between calculation accuracy and speed of calculation. The goal is to have the output error within 3LSB on the upper 16 bits of the 32-bit result. Because the [GFLIB\\_Sin](#) function is

implemented with consideration to fixed point fractional arithmetic, all variables are normalized to fit into the  $[-1, 1)$  range. Therefore, in order to cast the fractional value of the input angle  $w32In$   $[-1, 1)$  into the correct range  $[-\pi, \pi)$ , the input  $w32In$  must be multiplied by  $\pi$ . The fixed point fractional implementation of the **GFLIB\_Sin** function, using 9th order Taylor approximation, is given as follows:

$$\sin(\pi \cdot w32In) = (\pi \cdot w32In) - \frac{(\pi \cdot w32In)^3}{3!} + \frac{(\pi \cdot w32In)^5}{5!} - \frac{(\pi \cdot w32In)^7}{7!} + \frac{(\pi \cdot w32In)^9}{9!} \quad (3.9)$$

The 9th order polynomial approximation of the sine function has a high accuracy in the range  $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$  of the argument, but the calculation error is quickly increases in wider ranges. To minimize the error without having to use a higher order polynomial, the symmetry of the sine function  $\sin(x) = \sin(\pi - x)$  is utilized. Therefore, the input argument is transferred to be always in the range  $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$  and the Taylor polynomial is calculated only in the range of the argument  $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2})$ .

To make calculations more precise (because in calculations the value used is the input angle rounded to a 16-bit fractional number), the given argument value  $w32In$  (that is to be transferred into the range  $[-0.5, 0.5)$  due to the *sine* function symmetry) is shifted by 1 bit to the left (multiplied by 2). Then, the value of  $w32In^2$ , when used in the calculations, is in the range  $[-1, 1)$  instead of  $[-0.25, 0.25]$ . Shifting the input value by 1 bit to the left will increase the accuracy of the calculated  $\sin(\pi \cdot w32In)$  function. Implementing such a scale on the approximation function described by Equation (3.9), results in the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(w32In \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2}) &= \dots \\ \dots &= \left( \frac{(w32In \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2})}{2} - \frac{(w32In \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2})^3}{3! \cdot 2} + \frac{(w32In \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2})^5}{5! \cdot 2} - \frac{(w32In \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2})^7}{7! \cdot 2} + \frac{(w32In \cdot 2 \cdot \frac{\pi}{2})^9}{9! \cdot 2} \right) \cdot 2 \end{aligned} \quad (3.10)$$

Equation (3.10) can be further rewritten into the following form:

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(w32In \cdot \pi) &= (w32In \cdot 2)(a_1 + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(a_2 + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(a_3 + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(a_4 + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(a_5)))))) \cdot 2 \end{aligned} \quad (3.11)$$

where  $a_1 \dots a_5$  are coefficients of the approximation polynomial, which are calculated as follows (represented as 32-bit signed fractional numbers):

$$\begin{aligned} a_1 &= \frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})}{2} = 0.785398163397448 \Rightarrow \frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})}{2} \cdot 2^{31} = 0x6487ED51 \\ a_3 &= -\frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^3}{3! \cdot 2} = -0.322982048753123 \Rightarrow -\frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^3}{3! \cdot 2} \cdot 2^{31} = 0xD6A88634 \\ a_5 &= \frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^5}{5! \cdot 2} = 0.0398463131230835 \Rightarrow \frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^5}{5! \cdot 2} \cdot 2^{31} = 0x0519AF1A \\ a_7 &= -\frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^7}{7! \cdot 2} = -0.00234087706765934 \Rightarrow -\frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^7}{7! \cdot 2} \cdot 2^{31} = 0xFFB34B4D \\ a_9 &= \frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^9}{9! \cdot 2} = 8.02205923936799e^{-005} \Rightarrow \frac{(\frac{\pi}{2})^9}{9! \cdot 2} \cdot 2^{31} = 0x0002A0F0 \end{aligned} \quad (3.12)$$

Therefore, the resulting equation has the following form:

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(w32In \cdot \pi) &= (w32In \cdot 2)(0x6487ED51 + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(0xD6A88634 + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(0x0519AF1A + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(0xFFB34B4D + \\ &+ (w32In \cdot 2)^2(0x0002A0F0)))))) \cdot 2 \end{aligned} \quad (3.13)$$



## GFLIB\_Cos

Figure 3-2 depicts a floating point *cosine* function generated from Matlab and the approximated value of the *cosine* function obtained from `GFLIB_Cos`, as well as their difference. The course of calculation accuracy as a function of the input angle can be observed from this figure. The achieved accuracy with consideration to the 9th order Taylor approximation and described fixed point scaling is less than 2LSB on the upper 16 bits of the 32-bit result.

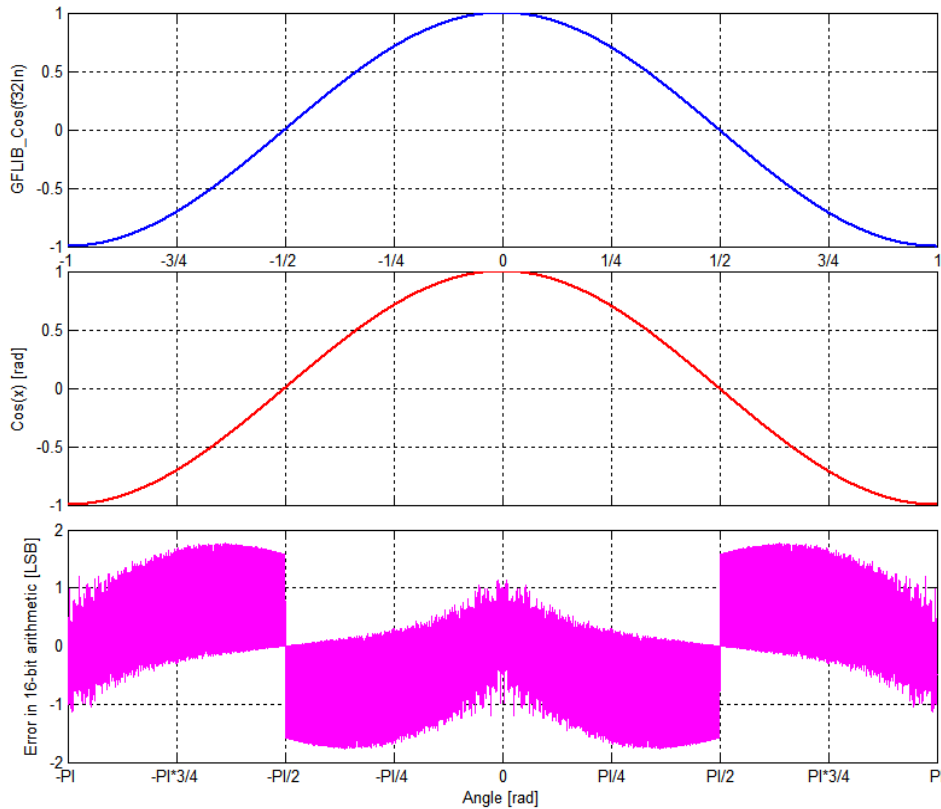


Figure 3-2:  $\cos(x)$  versus `GFLIB_Cos(w32In)`

### 3.3.6 Note

The input angle (`w32In`) is normalized into the range  $[-1, 1)$ . The polynomial coefficients are stored in a locally-defined structure with five members, the call of which is masked by the function alias `GFLIB_Cos`. The polynomial coefficients can be calculated by the user, in which case the `GFLIB_CosANSIC` function call with a pointer to the newly defined coefficients shall be used instead of the function alias.

### 3.3.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.3.8 Code Example

```

#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32Angle;
Frac32 f32Output;

void main(void)
{
    // input angle = 0.25 => pi/4
    f32Angle = FRAC32(0.25);

    // output should be 0x5A824000
    f32Output = GFLIB_Cos(f32Angle);
}

```

### 3.3.9 Performance

Table 3-4: [GFLIB\\_Cos](#) function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	90/70/102
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	61/45/42
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	61/45/42

### 3.4 GFLIB\_Tan

#### 3.4.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_TanANSIC(Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_TANTLR_T *const pParam)
```

#### 3.4.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_Tan(w32In) \
    GFLIB_TanANSIC(w32In, &gflibTanCoef)
```

#### 3.4.3 Arguments

Table 3-5: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
const <a href="#">GFLIB_TANTLR_T</a> *const	pParam	in	Pointer to an array of Taylor coefficients. Using the function alias <a href="#">GFLIB_Tan</a> , default coefficients are used.
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32In	in	Input argument is a 32-bit number that contains an angle in radians between $[-\pi, \pi)$ normalized between $[-1, 1)$ .

#### 3.4.4 Return

The function returns  $\tan(\pi \cdot w32In)$  as a fixed point 32-bit number, normalized between  $[-1, 1)$ .

#### 3.4.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_TanANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible source code implementation, can be called via the function alias [GFLIB\\_Tan](#).

The [GFLIB\\_Tan](#) function provides a computational method for calculation of a standard trigonometric *tangent* function  $\tan(x)$  using the piece-wise polynomial approximation. Function  $\tan(x)$  takes an angle and returns the ratio of two sides of a right-angled triangle. The ratio is the length of the side opposite the angle divided by the length of the side adjacent to the angle. Therefore, the tangent function is defined by:

$$\tan(x) \equiv \frac{\sin(x)}{\cos(x)} \tag{3.14}$$

Because both  $\sin(x)$  and  $\cos(x)$  are defined on interval  $[-\pi, \pi)$ , function  $\tan(x)$  is equal to zero when  $\sin(x) = 0$  and is equal to infinity when  $\cos(x) = 0$ . Therefore, the *tangent* function has asymptotes at  $n \cdot \frac{\pi}{2}$  for  $n = \pm 1, \pm 3, \pm 5 \dots$ . The graph of  $\tan(x)$  is shown in Figure 3-3.

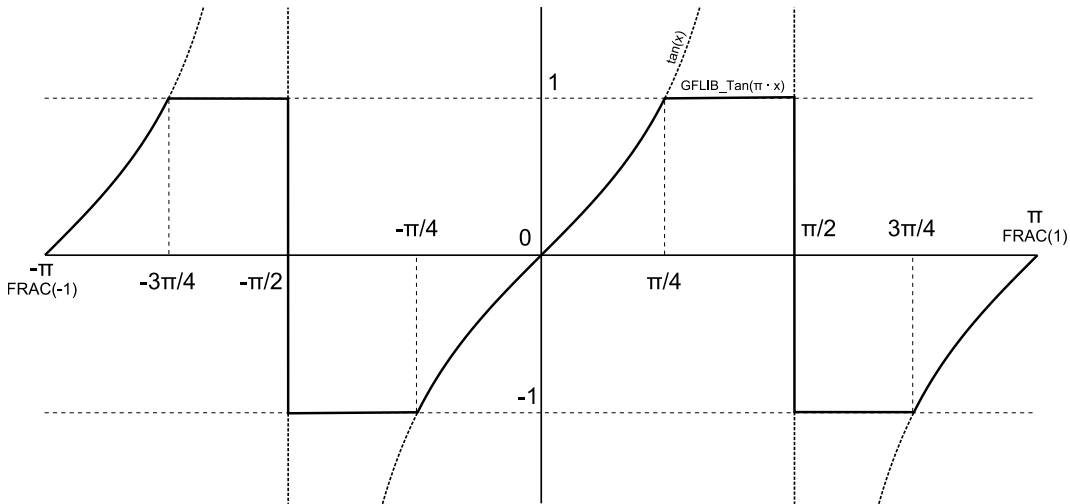


Figure 3-3: Course of the function GFLIB\_Tan

The **GFLIB\_Tan** function is implemented with consideration to fixed point fractional arithmetic, hence all tangent values falling beyond  $[-1, 1]$  are truncated to  $-1$  and  $1$  respectively. This truncation is applied for angles in the ranges  $[-\frac{3\pi}{4}, -\frac{\pi}{4}]$  and  $[\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{3\pi}{4}]$ . As can be further seen from Figure 3-3, tangent values are identical for angles in the ranges:

1.  $[-\frac{\pi}{4}, 0)$  and  $[\frac{3\pi}{4}, \pi)$
2.  $[-\pi, -\frac{3\pi}{4})$  and  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4})$

Moreover, it can be observed from Figure 3-3 that the course of the  $\tan(x)$  function output for angles in the first range. is identical, but with the opposite sign, to output for angles in second range. Therefore, the approximation of the *tangent* function over the entire defined range of input angles can be simplified to an approximation for angles in the range  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4})$ , and then, depending on the input angle, the result will be negated. In order to increase the accuracy of approximation without the need for a higher order polynomial, the interval  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4})$  is further divided into eight equally-spaced subintervals, with polynomial approximation done for each interval respectively. Such a division results in eight sets of polynomial coefficients. Moreover, it allows for the use of a polynomial of only the 4th order to achieve an accuracy of less than 0.5LSB (on the upper 16 bits of 32-bit results) across the full range of input angles.

The **GFLIB\_Tan** function uses fixed point fractional arithmetic, so to cast the fractional value of the input angle  $w32In \in [-1, 1)$  into the correct range  $[-\pi, \pi)$ , the fixed point input angle  $w32In$  must be multiplied by  $\pi$ . Then the fixed point fractional implementation of the approximation polynomial, used for calculation of each sub sector, is defined as follows:

$$f32Dump = a_1 \cdot w32In^3 + a_2 \cdot w32In^2 + a_3 \cdot w32In + a_4 \tag{3.15}$$

$$\tan(\pi \cdot w32In) = \begin{cases} f32Dump & \text{if } -1 \leq w32In < -0.5 \quad \text{or} \quad 0 \leq w32In < 0.5 \\ -f32Dump & \text{if } -0.5 \leq w32In < 0 \quad \text{or} \quad 0.5 \leq w32In < 1 \end{cases} \tag{3.16}$$

The division of the  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4})$  interval into eight subintervals, with polynomial coefficients calculated for each subinterval, is noted in Table 3-6. Polynomial coefficients were obtained using the

## GFLIB\_Tan

Matlab fitting function, where a polynomial of the 4th order was used for the fitting of each respective subinterval.

Table 3-6: Integer Polynomial coefficients for each interval

Interval	$a_1$	$a_2$	$a_3$	$a_4$
$\langle 0, \frac{\pi}{32} \rangle$	86016	256000	105668608	105498624
$\langle \frac{\pi}{32}, \frac{2\pi}{32} \rangle$	92160	786432	107732992	318550016
$\langle \frac{2\pi}{32}, \frac{3\pi}{32} \rangle$	106496	1380352	112027648	537917440
$\langle \frac{3\pi}{32}, \frac{4\pi}{32} \rangle$	133120	2091008	118910976	768380928
$\langle \frac{4\pi}{32}, \frac{5\pi}{32} \rangle$	174080	3000320	128995328	1015683072
$\langle \frac{5\pi}{32}, \frac{6\pi}{32} \rangle$	239616	4225024	143284224	1287151616
$\langle \frac{6\pi}{32}, \frac{7\pi}{32} \rangle$	348160	5963776	163397632	1592680448
$\langle \frac{7\pi}{32}, \frac{8\pi}{32} \rangle$	536576	8568832	192008192	1946363904

Figure 3-4 depicts a floating point *tangent* function generated from Matlab and the approximated value of the *tangent* function obtained from [GFLIB\\_Tan](#), as well as their difference. The course of calculation accuracy as a function of the input angle can be observed from this figure. The achieved accuracy, with consideration to the 4th order piece-wise polynomial approximation and described fixed point scaling, is less than 0.5LSB on the upper 16 bits of the 32-bit result.

### 3.4.6 Note

The input angle (w32In) is normalized into the range  $[-1, 1)$ . The polynomial coefficients are stored in a locally-defined structure, the call of which is masked by the function alias [GFLIB\\_Tan](#). The polynomial coefficients can be calculated by the user and in such a case the full [GFLIB\\_TanANSIC](#) function call with a pointer to the newly-defined coefficients shall be used instead of the function alias.

### 3.4.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.4.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32Angle;
Frac32 f32Output;

void main(void)
{
    // input angle = 0.25 => pi/4
```

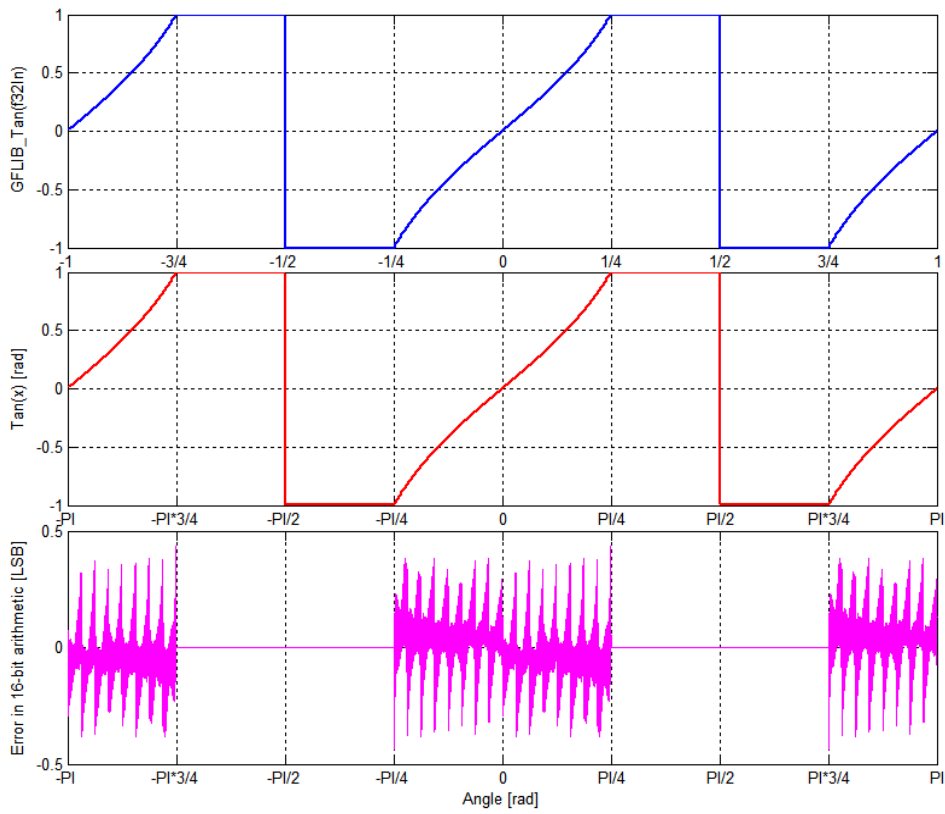


Figure 3-4: tan(x) versus GFLIB\_Tan(w32ln)

## GFLIB\_Tan

```

f32Angle = FRAC32(0.25);

// output should be 0x7FFFFFFF = 1
f32Output = GFLIB_Tan(f32Angle);
}

```

### 3.4.9 Performance

Table 3-7: GFLIB\_Tan function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	216/220/222
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	65/56/45
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	65/56/45

## 3.5 GFLIB\_Asin

### 3.5.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_AsinANSIC(Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_ASIN_TAYLOR_T *const pParam)
```

### 3.5.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_Asin(x) \
    GFLIB_AsinANSIC((x), &gflibAsinCoef)
```

### 3.5.3 Arguments

Table 3-8: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
const <a href="#">GFLIB_ASIN_TAYLOR_T</a> *const	pParam	in	Pointer to an array of Taylor coefficients. Using the function alias <a href="#">GFLIB_Asin</a> , default coefficients are used.
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32In	in	Input argument is a 32-bit number that contains a value between $[-1, 1)$ .

### 3.5.4 Return

The function returns  $\frac{\arcsin(w32In)}{\pi}$  as a fixed point 32-bit number, normalized between  $[-1, 1)$ .

### 3.5.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_AsinANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible source code implementation, can be called via the function alias [GFLIB\\_Asin](#).

The [GFLIB\\_Asin](#) function provides a computational method for calculation of a standard inverse trigonometric *arcsine* function  $\arcsin(x)$ , using the piece-wise polynomial approximation. Function  $\arcsin(x)$  takes the ratio of the length of the opposite side to the length of the hypotenuse and returns the angle.

The computational algorithm uses the symmetry of the  $\arcsin(x)$  function around the point  $(0, \pi/2)$ , which allows for computing the function values in the interval  $[0, 1)$  and to compute the function values in the interval  $[-1, 0)$  by the simple formula:

$$y_{[-1,0)} = -y_{[1,0)}, \tag{3.17}$$

where:

- $y_{[-1,0)}$  is the  $\arcsin(x)$  function value in the interval  $[-1, 0)$
- $y_{[1,0)}$  is the  $\arcsin(x)$  function value in the interval  $[1, 0)$



GFLIB\_Asin

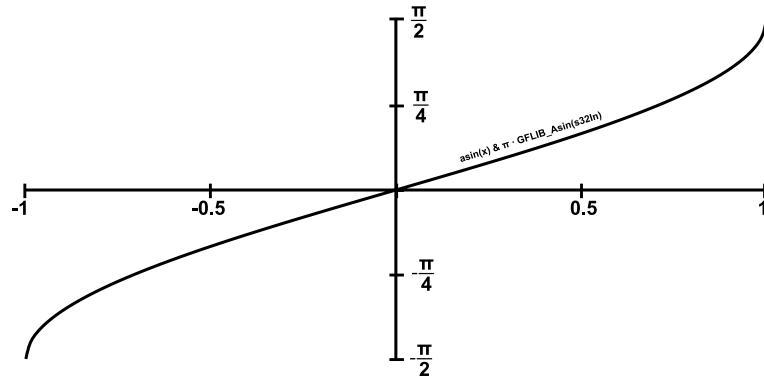


Figure 3-5: Course of the function GFLIB\_Asin

Additionally, because the  $\arcsin(x)$  function is difficult for polynomial approximation for  $x$  approaching 1 (or -1 by symmetry), due to its derivatives approaching infinity, a special transformation is used to transform the range of  $x$  from  $[0.5, 1)$  to  $(0, 0.5]$ :

$$\arcsin(\sqrt{1-x}) = \frac{\pi}{2} - \arcsin(\sqrt{x}) \tag{3.18}$$

In this way, the computation of the  $\arcsin(x)$  function in the range  $[0.5, 1)$  can be replaced by the computation in the range  $(0, 0.5]$ , in which approximation is easier. For the interval  $(0, 0.5]$ , the algorithm uses polynomial approximation as follows:

$$f32Dump = a_1 \cdot w32In^4 + a_2 \cdot w32In^3 + a_3 \cdot w32In^2 + a_4 \cdot w32In + a_5 \tag{3.19}$$

$$\arcsin(w32In) = \begin{cases} -f32Dump & \text{if } -1 \leq w32In < 0 \\ f32Dump & \text{if } 0 \leq w32In < 1 \end{cases} \tag{3.20}$$

The division of the  $[0, 1)$  interval into two subintervals, with polynomial coefficients calculated for each subinterval, is noted in Table 3-9.

Table 3-9: Integer Polynomial coefficients for each interval

Interval	$a_1$	$a_2$	$a_3$	$a_4$	$a_5$
$\langle 0, \frac{1}{2} \rangle$	91918582	66340080	9729967	682829947	12751
$\langle \frac{1}{2}, 1 \rangle$	-52453538	-36708911	-15136243	-964576326	1073652175

Polynomial coefficients were obtained using the Matlab fitting function, where a polynomial of the 5th order fit each respective subinterval. The Matlab was used as follows:

```
clear all
clc

number_of_range = 2;
i = 1;
range = 0;

Range = 1 / number_of_range;
```

**Set of General Math and Motor Control Functions for Cortex M4 Core, Rev. 1.4**

```

x(i,:) = (((i-1)*Range):(1/(2^15)):((i)*Range))';
y(i,:) = asin(x(i,:))/pi;
p(i,:) = polyfit((x(i,:)),(y(i,:)),4);

i=i+1;

Range = 1 / number_of_range;
x(i,:) = (((i-1)*Range):(1/(2^15)):((i)*Range))';
y(i,:) = asin(x(i,:))/pi;
x1(i,:) = ((x(i,:) - ((i-1)*Range)));
x1(i,:) = 0.5 - x1(i,:);
x2(i,:) = sqrt(x1(i,:));
p(i,:) = polyfit((x2(i,:)),(y(i,:)),4);
i=i+1;

f(2,:) = polyval(p(2,:),x2(2,:));
f(1,:) = polyval(p(1,:),x1(1,:));
error_1 = abs(f(2,:) - y(2,:));
max(error_1 * (2^15))
error_2 = abs(f(1,:) - y(1,:));
max(error_2 * (2^15))
plot(x(2,:),y(2,:),'-',x(2,:),f(2,:),'-',x(1,:),y(1,:),'-',x(1,:),f(1,:),'-');
coef = round(p * (2^31))

```

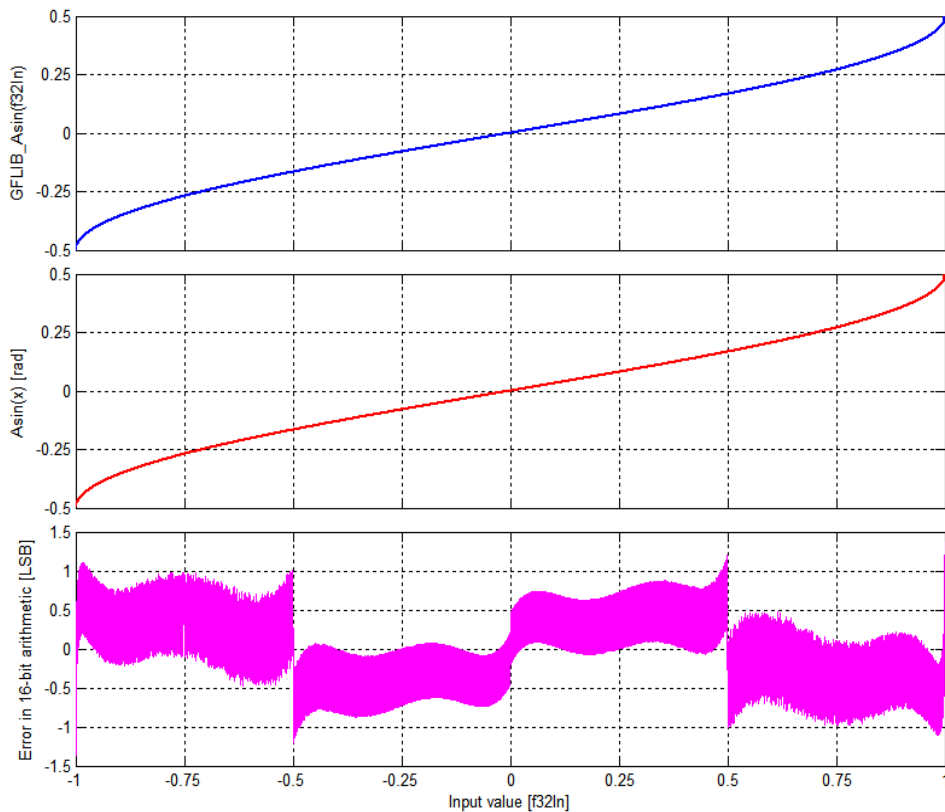


Figure 3-6: asin(x) vs. GFLIB\_Asin(w32In)

Figure 3-6 depicts a floating point *arcsine* function generated from Matlab and the approximated value of the *arcsine* function obtained from [GFLIB\\_Asin](#), as well as their difference. The

## GFLIB\_Asin

course of calculation accuracy as a function of the input ratio can be observed from this figure. The achieved accuracy, with consideration to the 5th order piece-wise polynomial approximation and described fixed point scaling, is less than 1.3LSB on the upper 16 bits of the 32-bit result.

### 3.5.6 Note

The output angle is normalized into the range  $[-0.5, 0.5)$ . The polynomial coefficients are stored in a locally-defined structure, the call of which is masked by the function alias `GFLIB_Asin`. The polynomial coefficients can be calculated by the user, in which a case the full `GFLIB_AsinANSIC` function call with a pointer to the newly defined coefficients shall be used instead of the function alias.

### 3.5.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.5.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32Input;
Frac32 f32Angle;

void main(void)
{
    // input f32Input = 1
    f32Input = FRAC32(1);

    // output should be 0x3FFE A1CF = 0.49995 => pi/2
    f32Angle = GFLIB_Asin(f32Input);
}
```

### 3.5.9 Performance

Table 3-10: `GFLIB_Asin` function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	112/152/110
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	40/40/40
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	155/144/112
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	67/56/39

## 3.6 GFLIB\_Acos

### 3.6.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_AcosANSIC(Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_ACOS_TAYLOR_T *const pParam)
```

### 3.6.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_Acos(x) \
    GFLIB_AcosANSIC((x), &gflibAcosCoef)
```

### 3.6.3 Arguments

Table 3-11: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32In	in	Input argument is a 32-bit number that contains a value between $[-1, 1)$ .
const <a href="#">GFLIB_ACOS_TAYLOR_T</a> *const	pParam	in	Pointer to an array of Taylor coefficients. The function alias <a href="#">GFLIB_Acos</a> uses the default coefficients.

### 3.6.4 Return

The function returns  $\frac{\arccos(f32In)}{\pi}$  as a fixed point 32-bit number normalized between  $[0, 1)$ .

### 3.6.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_AcosANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible source code implementation, can be called via the function alias [GFLIB\\_Acos](#).

The [GFLIB\\_Acos](#) function provides a computational method for calculation of the standard inverse trigonometric *arccosine* function  $\arccos(x)$ , using the piece-wise polynomial approximation. Function  $\arccos(x)$  takes the ratio of the length of the adjacent side to the length of the hypotenuse and returns the angle.

The computational algorithm uses the symmetry of the  $\arccos(x)$  function around the point  $(0, \pi/2)$ , which allows for computing the function values in the interval  $[0, 1)$  and to compute the function values in the interval  $[-1, 0)$  by the simple formula:

$$y_{[-1,0)} = \pi/2 + y_{[0,1)}, \tag{3.21}$$

where:

- $y_{[-1,0)}$  is the  $\arccos(x)$  function value in the interval  $[-1, 0)$
- $y_{[0,1)}$  is the  $\arccos(x)$  function value in the interval  $[0, 1)$

## GFLIB\_Acos

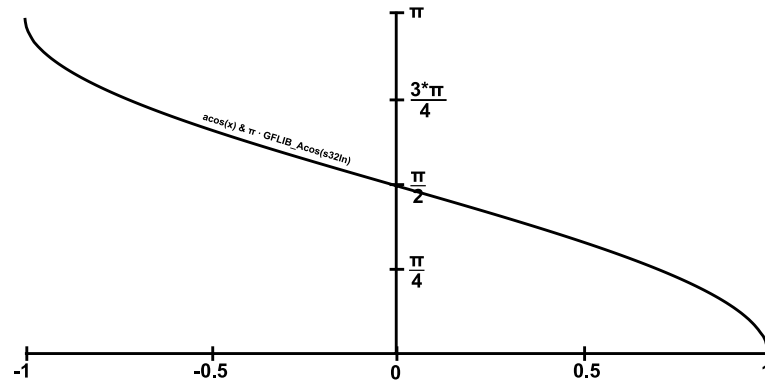


Figure 3-7: Course of the function GFLIB\_Acos

Additionally, because the  $\arccos(x)$  function is difficult for polynomial approximation for  $x$  approaching 1 (or -1 by symmetry), due to its derivatives approaching infinity, a special transformation is used to transform the range of  $x$  from  $[0.5, 1)$  to  $(0, 0.5]$ :

$$\arccos(\sqrt{1-x}) = \frac{\pi}{2} - \arccos(\sqrt{x}) \quad (3.22)$$

In this way, the computation of the  $\arccos(x)$  function in the range  $[0.5, 1)$  can be replaced by the computation in the range  $(0, 0.5]$ , in which approximation is easier. For the interval  $(0, 0.5]$ , the algorithm uses a polynomial approximation as follows:

$$f32Dump = a_1 \cdot f32In^4 + a_2 \cdot f32In^3 + a_3 \cdot f32In^2 + a_4 \cdot f32In + a_5 \quad (3.23)$$

$$\arccos(f32In) = \begin{cases} -f32Dump & \text{if } -1 \leq f32In < 0 \\ f32Dump & \text{if } 0 \leq f32In < 1 \end{cases} \quad (3.24)$$

The division of the  $[0, 1)$  interval into two subintervals, with polynomial coefficients calculated for each subinterval, is noted in Table 3-12.

Table 3-12: Integer Polynomial coefficients for each interval

Interval	$a_1$	$a_2$	$a_3$	$a_4$	$a_5$
$\langle 0, \frac{1}{2} \rangle$	91918582	66340080	9729967	682829947	12751
$\langle \frac{1}{2}, 1 \rangle$	-52453538	-36708911	-15136243	-964576326	1073652175

The implementation of the GFLIB\_Acos is almost the same as in the function GFLIB\_Asin. However, the output of the GFLIB\_Acos is corrected as follows:

$$f32Dump = FRAC32(0.5) - f32Dump \quad (3.25)$$

The polynomial coefficients were obtained using the Matlab fitting function, where a polynomial of 5th order was used for the fitting of each respective subinterval. Because the functions *arcsine* and *arccosine* are similar, the GFLIB\_Acos function uses the same polynomial coefficients as the GFLIB\_Asin function.

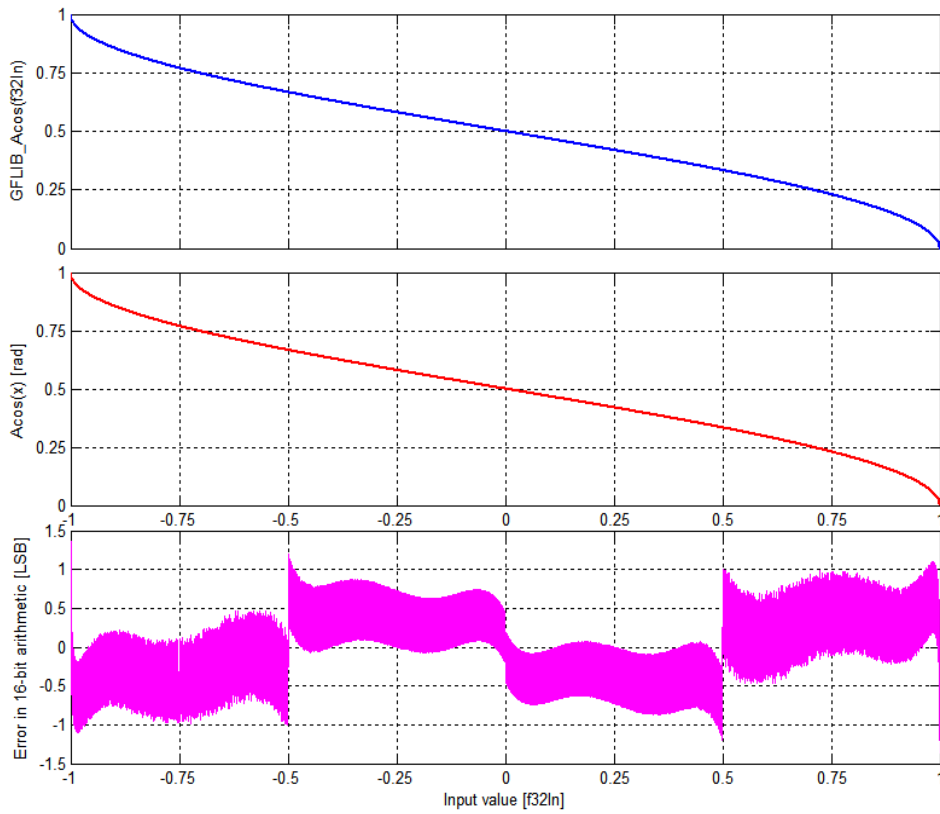


Figure 3-8: acos(x) versus GFLIB\_Acos(f32In)

## GFLIB\_Acos

Figure 3-8 depicts the floating point *arccosine* function generated from Matlab, the approximated value of the *arccosine* function obtained from the `GFLIB_Acos` function, and their difference. The achieved accuracy is better than 1.3LSB on the upper 16 bits of the 32-bit result.

### 3.6.6 Note

The output angle is normalized into the range  $[0, 1)$ . The function uses data stored in the `glibAcosCoef` structure, which is supplied to the `GFLIB_Acos` function as the argument, which is masked in the function alias `GFLIB_Acos`. The polynomial coefficients can be calculated by the user in which case the `GFLIB_AcosANSIC` function call with a pointer to the newly defined coefficients shall be used instead of the function alias.

### 3.6.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.6.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32Input;
Frac32 f32Angle;

void main(void)
{
    // input f32Input = 0
    f32Input = FRAC32(0);

    // output should be 0x400031EF = 0.5 => pi/2
    f32Angle = GFLIB_Acos(f32Input);
}
```

### 3.6.9 Performance

Table 3-13: `GFLIB_Acos` function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	150/150/152
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	158/144/122
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	74/57/48

## 3.7 GFLIB\_Atan

### 3.7.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_AtanANSIC(Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_ATAN_TAYLOR_T *const pParam)
```

### 3.7.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_Atan(x) \
    GFLIB_AtanANSIC((x), &gflibAtanCoef)
```

### 3.7.3 Arguments

Table 3-14: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
const <a href="#">GFLIB_ATAN_TAYLOR_T</a> *const	pParam	in	Pointer to an array of Taylor coefficients. Using the function alias <a href="#">GFLIB_Atan</a> , default coefficients are used.
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32In	in	Input argument is a 32-bit number between $[-1, 1)$ .

### 3.7.4 Return

The function returns the atan of the input argument as a fixed point 32-bit number that contains the angle in radians between  $[-\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{4})$ , normalized between  $[-0.25, 0.25)$ .

### 3.7.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_AtanANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible source code implementation, can be called via the function alias [GFLIB\\_Atan](#).

The [GFLIB\\_Atan](#) function provides a computational method for calculation of a standard trigonometric *arctangent* function  $\arctan(x)$ , using the piece-wise polynomial approximation. Function  $\arctan(x)$  takes a ratio and returns the angle of two sides of a right-angled triangle. The ratio is the length of the side opposite the angle divided by the length of the side adjacent to the angle. The graph of  $\arctan(x)$  is shown in Figure 3-9.

The [GFLIB\\_Atan](#) function is implemented with consideration to fixed point fractional arithmetic. As can be further seen from Figure 3-9, the arctangent values are identical for the input ranges  $[-1, 0)$  and  $[0, 1)$ . Figure 3-9 also shows that the course of the  $\arctan(x)$  function output for a ratio in interval 1. is identical, but with the opposite sign, to the output for a ratio in second interval. Therefore, the approximation of the *arctangent* function over the entire defined range of input ratios can be simplified to the approximation for a ratio in range  $[0, 1)$ , and then, depending on the input ratio, the result will be negated. In order to increase the accuracy of approximation without the need for a higher order polynomial, the interval  $[0, 1)$  is further divided



## GFLIB\_Atan

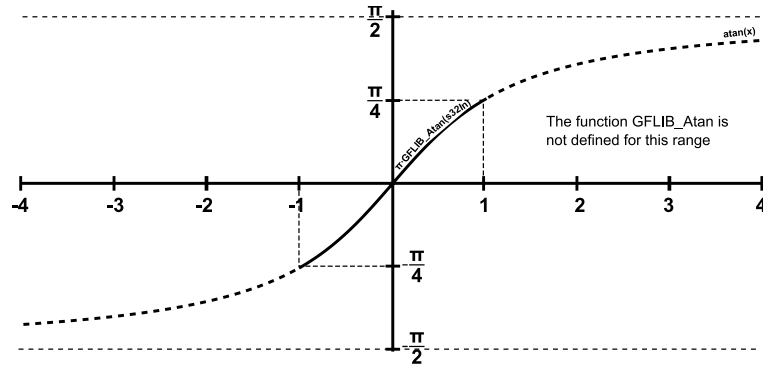


Figure 3-9: Course of the function GFLIB\_Atan

into eight equally spaced sub intervals, and polynomial approximation is done for each interval respectively. Such a division results in eight sets of polynomial coefficients. Moreover, it allows for using a polynomial of only the 4th order to achieve an accuracy of less than 1LSB (on the upper 16 bits of 32-bit results) across the entire range of input ratios.

The `GFLIB_Atan` function uses fixed point fractional arithmetic, so to cast the fractional value of the output angle  $[-0.25, 0.25]$  into the correct range  $[-\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{4}]$ , the fixed point output angle can be multiplied by  $\pi$  for an angle in radians. Then, the fixed point fractional implementation of the approximation polynomial, used for calculation of each sub sector, is defined as follows:

$$\text{f32Dump} = a_1 \cdot w32In^3 + a_2 \cdot w32In^2 + a_3 \cdot w32In + a_4 \quad (3.26)$$

$$\arctan(w32In) = \begin{cases} \text{f32Dump} & \text{if } 0 \leq w32In < 1 \\ -\text{f32Dump} & \text{if } -1 \leq w32In < 0 \end{cases} \quad (3.27)$$

The division of the  $[0, 1)$  interval into eight subintervals, with polynomial coefficients calculated for each subinterval, is noted in Table 3-15. Polynomial coefficients were obtained using the Matlab fitting function, where a polynomial of the 4th order was used for the fitting of each respective subinterval.

Figure 3-10 depicts a floating point *arctangent* function generated from Matlab and the approximated value of the *arctangent* function obtained from `GFLIB_Atan`, and their difference. The course of calculation accuracy as a function of the input value can be observed from this figure. The achieved accuracy, with consideration to the 4th order piece-wise polynomial approximation and described fixed point scaling, is less than 0.5LSB on the upper 16 bits of the 32-bit result.

### 3.7.6 Note

The output angle is normalized into the range  $[-0.25, 0.25]$ . The polynomial coefficients are stored in locally defined structure, the call of which is masked by the function alias `GFLIB_Atan`. The polynomial coefficients can be calculated by the user, in which case the full `GFLIB_AtanANSIC` function call with a pointer to the newly defined coefficients shall be used instead of the function alias.

Table 3-15: Integer Polynomial coefficients for each interval:

Interval	$a_1$	$a_2$	$a_3$	$a_4$
$\langle 0, \frac{1}{8} \rangle$	-53248	-165888	42557440	42668032
$\langle \frac{1}{8}, \frac{2}{8} \rangle$	-45056	-464896	41271296	126697472
$\langle \frac{2}{8}, \frac{3}{8} \rangle$	-30720	-690176	38922240	207040512
$\langle \frac{3}{8}, \frac{4}{8} \rangle$	-14336	-821248	35858432	281909248
$\langle \frac{4}{8}, \frac{5}{8} \rangle$	-2048	-866304	32454656	350251008
$\langle \frac{5}{8}, \frac{6}{8} \rangle$	8192	-845824	29009920	411703296
$\langle \frac{6}{8}, \frac{7}{8} \rangle$	12288	-786432	25735168	466407424
$\langle \frac{7}{8}, 1 \rangle$	14336	-708608	22738944	514828288

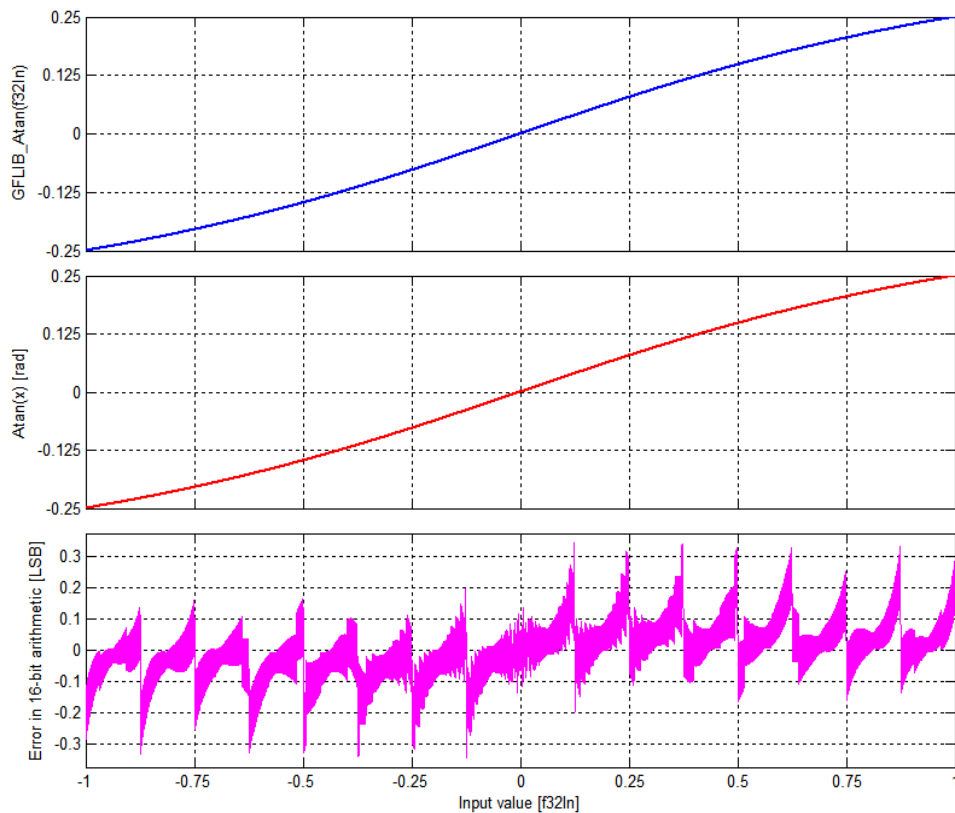


Figure 3-10: atan(x) vs. GFLIB\_Atan(w32ln)

## GFLIB\_Atan

### 3.7.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.7.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32Input;
Frac32 f32Angle;

void main(void)
{
    // input ratio = 0x7FFFFFFF => 1
    f32Input = FRAC32(1);

    // output angle should be 0x1FFFBD7F = 0.249999 => pi/4
    f32Angle = GFLIB_Atan(f32Input);
}
```

### 3.7.9 Performance

Table 3-16: GFLIB\_Atan function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	208/208/206
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	55/41/36
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	55/38/36

## 3.8 GFLIB\_AtanYX

### 3.8.1 Declaration

```
Word32 GFLIB_AtanYXANSIC(Word32 w32InY, Word32 w32InX)
```

### 3.8.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_AtanXY(x, y) \
    GFLIB_AtanYXANSIC((y), (x))
```

### 3.8.3 Arguments

Table 3-17: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Word32	w32InY	in	The ordinate of the input vector (y coordinate).
Word32	w32InX	in	The abscissa of the input vector (x coordinate).

### 3.8.4 Return

The function returns the angle between the positive x-axis of a plane and the direction of the vector given by the x and y coordinates provided as parameters.

### 3.8.5 Description

The function returns the angle between the positive x-axis of a plane and the direction of the vector given by the x and y coordinates provided as parameters. The first parameter, `w32InY`, is the ordinate (the y coordinate) and the second parameter, `w32InX`, is the abscissa (the x coordinate). Both the input parameters are assumed to be in the fractional range of  $[-1, 1]$ . The computed angle is limited by the fractional range of  $[-1, 1]$ , which corresponds to the real range of  $[-\pi, \pi]$ . The counter-clockwise direction is assumed to be positive and thus a positive angle will be computed if the provided ordinate (`w32InY`) is positive. Similarly, a negative angle will be computed for the negative ordinate. The calculations are performed in a few steps. In the first step, the angle is positioned within the correct half-quarter of the circumference of a circle by dividing the angle into two parts: the integral multiple of 45 deg (half-quarter) and the remaining offset within the 45 deg range. Simple geometric properties of the cartesian coordinate system are used to calculate the coordinates of the vector with the calculated angle offset. In the second step, the vector ordinate is divided by the vector abscissa ( $y/x$ ) to obtain the tangent value of the angle offset. The angle offset is computed by applying the ordinary arc tangent function. The sum of the integral multiple of half-quarters and the angle offset within a single half-quarter form the angle to be computed. The function will return 0 if both input arguments are 0. In comparison to the [GFLIB\\_Atan](#) function, the `GFLIB_AtanYX` function correctly places

## GFLIB\_AtanYX

the calculated angle within the whole fractional range of  $[-1, 1)$ , which corresponds to the real angle range of  $[-\pi, \pi)$ .

### 3.8.6 Note

The function calls the [GFLIB\\_Atan](#) function. The computed value is within the range of  $[-1, 1)$ .

### 3.8.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.8.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32InY;
Frac32 f32InX;
Frac32 f32Ang;

void main(void)
{
    f32InY = FRAC32(0.5);
    f32InX = FRAC32(0.5);

    // Angle 45 deg = PI/4 rad = 0.25 = 0x20000000
    // output should be close to 0x20001000
    f32Ang = GFLIB_AtanYX(f32InY, f32InX);

    return;
}
```

### 3.8.9 Performance

Table 3-18: GFLIB\_AtanYX function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	188/188/268
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	198/157/112
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	109/84/74

### 3.9 GFLIB\_AtanYXShifted

#### 3.9.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_AtanYXShiftedANSIC(Frac32 f32InY, Frac32 f32InX, const
GFLIB_ATANYXSHIFTED_T *const pParam)
```

#### 3.9.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_AtanYXShifted(y, x, p) \
    GFLIB_AtanYXShiftedANSIC((y), (x), (p))
```

#### 3.9.3 Arguments

Table 3-19: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32InY	in	The value of the first signal, assumed to be $\sin(\theta)$ .
Frac32	f32InX	in	The value of the second signal, assumed to be $\sin(\theta + \Delta\theta)$ .
const <a href="#">GFLIB_ATANYXSHIFTED_T</a> *const	pParam	in	The parameters for the function.

#### 3.9.4 Return

The function returns the angle of two sine waves shifted in phase one to each other.

#### 3.9.5 Description

The function calculates the angle of two sinusoidal signals, one shifted in phase to the other. The phase shift between sinusoidal signals does not have to be  $\pi/2$  and can be any value. It is assumed that the arguments of the function are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} y &= \sin(\theta) \\ x &= \sin(\theta + \Delta\theta) \end{aligned} \tag{3.28}$$

where:

- $x, y$  are respectively, the w32InX, and w32InY arguments
- $\theta$  is the angle to be computed by the function
- $\Delta\theta$  is the phase difference between the  $x, y$  signals

## GFLIB\_AtanYXShifted

At the end of computations, an angle offset  $\theta_{Offset}$  is added to the computed angle  $\theta$ . The angle offset is an additional parameter, which can be used to set the zero of the  $\theta$  axis. If  $\theta_{Offset}$  is zero, then the angle computed by the function will be exactly  $\theta$ . The `GFLIB_AtanYXShifted` function does not directly use the angle offset  $\theta_{Offset}$  and the phase difference  $\theta$ . The function's parameters, contained in the function parameters structure `GFLIB_ATANYXSHIFTED_T`, need to be computed by means of the provided Matlab function. If  $\Delta\theta = \pi/2$  or  $\Delta\theta = -\pi/2$ , then the function is similar to the `GFLIB_AtanYX` function, however, the `GFLIB_AtanYX` function in this case is more effective in execution time and accuracy. In order to use the function, the following steps need to be completed:

- define  $\Delta\theta$  and  $\theta_{Offset}$ , the  $\Delta\theta$  shall be known from the input sinusoidal signals, the  $\theta_{Offset}$  needs to be set arbitrarily
- compute values for the function parameters structure by means of the provided Matlab function
- convert the computed values into integer format and insert them into the C code (see also the C code example at the end of `GFLIB_AtanYXShifted`)

The function uses the following algorithm for computing the angle:

$$\begin{aligned} b &= \frac{S}{2\cos\frac{\Delta\theta}{2}}(y+x) \\ a &= \frac{S}{2\sin\frac{\Delta\theta}{2}}(x-y) \\ \theta &= \text{AtanYX}(b, a) - (\Delta\theta/2 - \theta_{Offset}) \end{aligned} \quad (3.29)$$

where:

- $x, y$  are respectively, the `w32InX`, and `w32InY`
- $\theta$  is the angle to be computed by the function
- $\Delta\theta$  is the phase difference between the  $x, y$  signals
- $S$  is a scaling coefficient,  $S$  is almost 1, ( $S < 1$ ), see also the explanation below
- $a, b$  intermediate variables
- $\theta_{Offset}$  is the additional phase shift, the computed angle will be  $\theta + \theta_{Offset}$

The scale coefficient  $S$  is used to prevent overflow and to assure symmetry around 0 for the entire fractional range.  $S$  shall be less than 1.0, but as large as possible. The algorithm implemented in this function uses the value of  $1 - 2^{-15}$ . The algorithm can be easily justified by proving the trigonometric identity:

$$\tan(\theta + \Delta\theta) = \frac{(y+x)\cos\frac{\Delta\theta}{2}}{(x-y)\sin\frac{\Delta\theta}{2}} \quad (3.30)$$

For the purposes of fractional arithmetic, the algorithm is implemented such that additional values are used as shown in the following equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{S}{2\cos\frac{\Delta\theta}{2}} &= C_y = K_y 2^{N_y} \\ \frac{S}{2\sin\frac{\Delta\theta}{2}} &= C_x = K_x 2^{N_x} \\ \theta_{adj} &= \Delta\theta/2 - \theta_{offset} \end{aligned} \quad (3.31)$$

where:

- $C_y, C_x$  are the algorithm coefficients for  $y$  and  $x$  signals
- $K_y$  is the multiplication coefficient of the  $y$  signal, represented by the parameters structure member `pParam->w32Ky`
- $K_x$  is the multiplication coefficient of the  $x$  signal, represented by the parameters structure member `pParam->w32Kx`
- $N_y$  is the scaling coefficient of the  $y$  signal, represented the by parameters structure member `pParam->w32Ny`
- $N_x$  is the scaling coefficient of the  $x$  signal, represented by the parameters structure member `pParam->w32Nx`
- $\theta_{adj}$  is an adjusting angle, represented by the parameters structure member `pParam->w32ThetaAdj`

The multiplication and scaling coefficients, as well as the adjusting angle, shall be defined in a parameters structure provided as the function input parameter. The function uses 16-bit fractional arithmetic for multiplication, therefore the 16 least significant bits of the input values and the  $K_y, K_x$  multiplication coefficients are ignored. The function initialization parameters can be calculated as shown in the following Matlab code:

```
function [KY, KX, NY, NX, THETAADJ] = atanyxshiftedpar(dthdeg, thoffsetdeg)
// ATANYXSHIFTEDPAR calculation of parameters for atanyxshifted() function
//
// [KY, KX, NY, NX, THETAADJ] = atanyxshiftedpar(dthdeg, thoffsetdeg)
//
// dthdeg = phase shift (delta theta) between sine waves in degrees
// thoffsetdeg = angle offset (theta offset) in degrees
// NY - scaling coefficient of y signal
// NX - scaling coefficient of x signal
// KY - multiplication coefficient of y signal
// KX - multiplication coefficient of x signal
// THETAADJ - adjusting angle in radians, scaled from [-pi, pi) to [-1, 1)

if (dthdeg < -180) || (dthdeg >= 180)
    error('atanyxshiftedpar: dthdeg out of range');
end
if (thoffsetdeg < -180) || (thoffsetdeg >= 180)
    error('atanyxshiftedpar: thoffsetdeg out of range');
end

dth2 = ((dthdeg/2)/180*pi);
```



## GFLIB\_AtanYXShifted

```

thoffset = (thoffsetdeg/180*pi);
CY = (1 - 2^-15)/(2*cos(dth2));
CX = (1 - 2^-15)/(2*sin(dth2));
if(abs(CY) >= 1) NY = ceil(log2(abs(CY)));
else NY = 0;
end
if(abs(CX) >= 1) NX = ceil(log2(abs(CX)));
else NX = 0;
end
KY = CY/2^NY;
KX = CX/2^NX;
THETAADJ = dthdeg/2 - thoffsetdeg;

if THETAADJ >= 180
    THETAADJ = THETAADJ - 360;
elseif THETAADJ < -180
    THETAADJ = THETAADJ + 360;
end

THETAADJ = THETAADJ/180;

return;

```

While applying the function, some general guidelines should be considered. At some values of the phase shift, and particularly at phase shift approaching -180, 0, or 180 degrees, the algorithm may become numerically unstable. This will cause any error, whether contributed by input signal imperfections or through finite precision arithmetic, to be magnified significantly. Therefore, care should be taken to avoid error where possible. The detailed error analysis of the algorithm is complicated, however, general guidelines are provided. There are several sources of error in the function:

- error of the supplied signal values due to the finite resolution of the AD conversion
- error contributed by higher order harmonics appearing in the input signals
- computational error of the multiplication due to the finite length of registers
- error of the phase shift  $\Delta\theta$  representation in the finite precision arithmetic and in the values
- error due to differences in signal amplitudes

It should be noted that the function requires both signals to have the same amplitude. To minimize the output error, the amplitude of both signals should be as close to 1.0 as possible. The function has been tested to be reliable at a phase shift in the range of [-165, -15] and [15, 165] degrees for perfectly sinusoidal input signals. Beyond this range, the function operates correctly, however, the output error can be beyond the guaranteed value. In a real application, an error, contributed by an AD conversion and by higher order harmonics of the input signals, should also be taken into account.

### 3.9.6 Note

The function calls the GFLIB\_AtanYX function. The function may become numerically unstable for a phase shift approaching -180, 0 or 180 degrees. The function accuracy is guaranteed for a phase shift in the range of [-165, -15] and [15, 165] degrees at perfect input signals.

### 3.9.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.9.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32InY;
Frac32 f32InX;
Frac32 f32Ang;
GFLIB_ATANYXSHIFTED_T Param;

void main(void)
{
    //dtheta = 69.33deg, thetaoffset = 10deg
    //CY = (1 - 2^-15)/(2*cos((69.33/2)/180*pi))= 0.60789036201452440
    //CX = (1 - 2^-15)/(2*sin((69.33/2)/180*pi))= 0.87905201358520957
    //NY = 0 (abs(CY) < 1)
    //NX = 0 (abs(CX) < 1)
    //KY = 0.60789/2^0 = 0.60789036201452440
    //KX = 0.87905/2^0 = 0.87905201358520957
    //THETAADJ = 10/180 = 0.1370277777777778

    Param.f32Ky = FRAC32(0.60789036201452440);
    Param.f32Kx = FRAC32(0.87905201358520957);
    Param.w32Ny = 0;
    Param.w32Nx = 0;
    Param.w32ThetaAdj = FRAC32(0.1370277777777778);

    // theta = 15 deg
    // Y = sin(theta) = 0.2588190
    // X = sin(theta + dtheta) = 0.9951074
    f32InY = FRAC32(0.2588190);
    f32InX = FRAC32(0.9951074);
    f32Ang = GFLIB_AtanYXShifted(f32InY, f32InX, &Param);

    // f32Ang contains 0x11c6cdfc, the theoretical value is 0x11c71c72

    return;
}
```

### 3.9.9 Performance:

Table 3-20: [GFLIB\\_AtanYXShifted](#) function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	124/124/128
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	277/211/154
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	197/147/124

## 3.10 GFLIB\_Sqrt

### 3.10.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_SqrtANSIC(Frac32 f32In)
```

### 3.10.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_Sqrt(f32In) \
    GFLIB_SqrtANSIC(f32In)
```

### 3.10.3 Arguments

Table 3-21: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32In	in	The input value.

### 3.10.4 Return

The function returns the square root of the input value. The return value is within the  $[0, 1)$  fraction range.

### 3.10.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_Sqrt](#) function computes the square root of the input value. The computations are made by a simple iterative testing of each bit starting with the most significant one. In total, 15 iterations are made, each performing the following steps:

1. Add a single testing bit to the tentative square root value.
2. Square the tentative square root value and test whether it is greater or lower than the input value.
3. If greater, clear the bit in the tentative square root value.
4. Shift the single testing bit right.

Figure 3-11 depicts a floating point  $\text{sqrt}(x)$  function generated from Matlab, the calculated value of the  $\text{sqrt}$  function obtained from [GFLIB\\_Sqrt](#), and their difference. The course of calculation accuracy as a function of the input value can be observed from this figure. The computed value is equal to or is 1LSB (on the upper 16 bits of the 32-bit result;  $1\text{LSB} \equiv 2^{-15}$ ) less than the true square root value. In order to obtain a value with a 0.5LSB (16bit) accuracy, additional iterations are required.

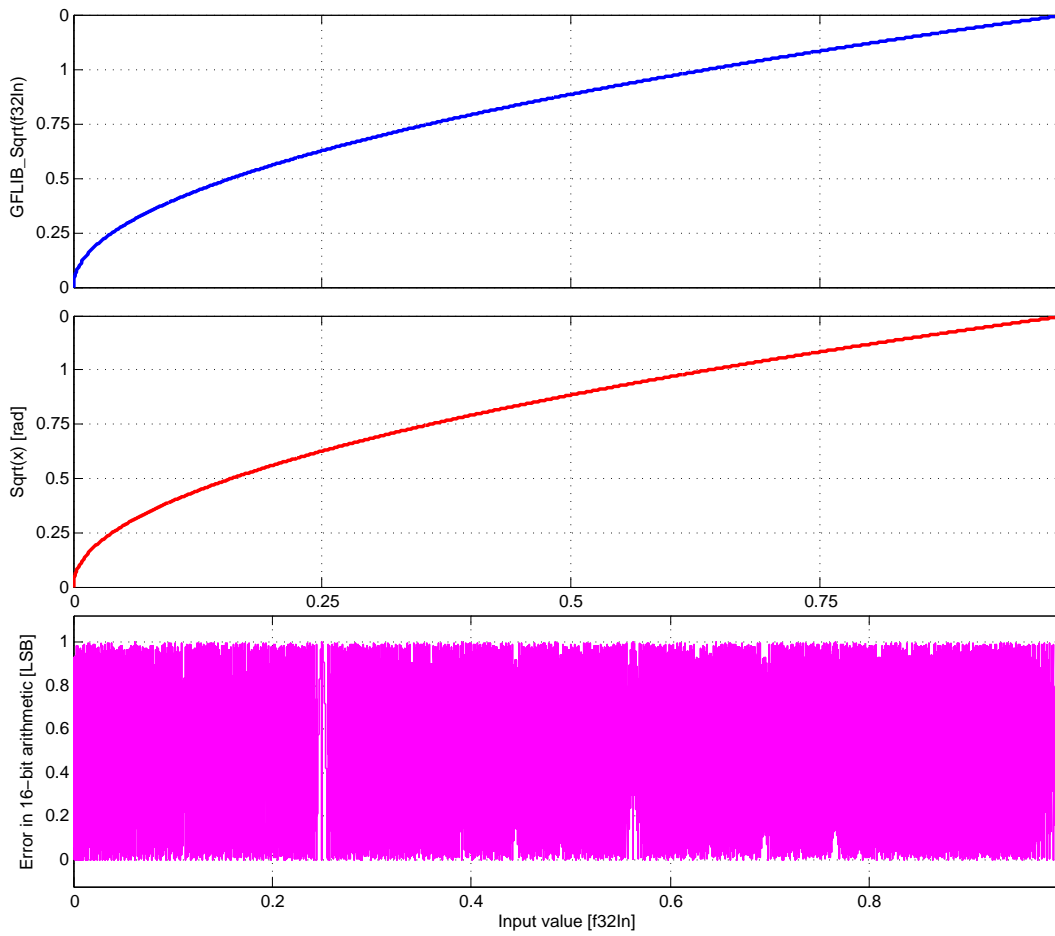


Figure 3-11: real sqrt(x) versus GFLIB\_Sqrt(w32In)

## GFLIB\_Sqrt

### 3.10.6 Note

The input value is limited to the range  $[0, 1)$ , the computed value is undefined if not within this range.

### 3.10.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.10.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32In;
Frac32 f32Out;

void main(void)
{
    // f32In = 0.5 = 0x40000000
    f32In = FRAC32(0.5);

    // f32Out should be 0x5a820000
    f32Out = GFLIB_Sqrt(f32In);

    return;
}
```

### 3.10.9 Performance

Table 3-22: [GFLIB\\_Sqrt](#) function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	234/234/234
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	87/85/64
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	87/85/64

### 3.11 GFLIB\_Sign

#### 3.11.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_SignANSIC(Frac32 f32In)
```

#### 3.11.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_Sign(x) \
    GFLIB_SignANSIC(x)
```

#### 3.11.3 Arguments

Table 3-23: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32In	in	Input signal fraction

#### 3.11.4 Return

The GFLIB\_Sign function returns the sign of the argument.

#### 3.11.5 Description

The function GFLIB\_Sign calculates the sign of the input argument. If the the input value is negative, then the return value will be set to -1 (0x80000000 hex). If the input value is zero, then the return value will be set to 0 (0x0 hex). If the input value is greater than zero, the return value will be almost 1 (0x7fffffff hex). In mathematical terms:

$$y_{out} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } x_{in} > 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x_{in} = 0 \\ -1 & \text{if } x_{in} < 0 \end{cases} \quad (3.32)$$

where:

- $y_{out}$  is the return value
- $x_{in}$  is the input value provided as w32In parameter

#### 3.11.6 Note

The function can be used as an argument of the conditional statement.

#### 3.11.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

## GFLIB\_Sign

### 3.11.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32In;
Frac32 f32Out;

void main(void)
{
    // input value = 0.5
    // output should be 0x7FFFFFFF
    f32In = FRAC32(0.5);
    f32Out = GFLIB_Sign(f32In);

    // input value = 0.0
    // output should be 0x00000000
    f32In = FRAC32(0.0);
    f32Out = GFLIB_Sign(f32In);

    // input value = -0.5
    // output should be 0x80000000
    f32In = FRAC32(-0.5);
    f32Out = GFLIB_Sign(f32In);

    return;
}
```

### 3.11.9 Performance

Table 3-24: GFLIB\_Sign function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	22/22/20
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	17/16/12
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	15/13/12

## 3.12 GFLIB\_Lut1D

### 3.12.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_Lut1DANSIC(Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_LUT1D_T *const pParam)
```

### 3.12.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_Lut1D(x, pParam) \
    GFLIB_Lut1DANSIC((x), (pParam))
```

### 3.12.3 Arguments

Table 3-25: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32In	in	The abscissa for which 1D interpolation is performed.
const GFLIB_LUT1D_T *const	pParam	in	Pointer to the parameters structure.

### 3.12.4 Return

The GFLIB\_Lut1D returns the interpolated value from the table with 16-bit accuracy.

### 3.12.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_Lut1D](#) function performs a one-dimensional linear interpolation over a table of data. The data is assumed to represent a one-dimensional function sampled at equidistant points. The following interpolation formula is used:

$$y = y_1 + \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} \cdot (x - x_1) \tag{3.33}$$

where:

- $y$  is the interpolated value
- $y_1$  and  $y_2$  are the ordinate values at, respectively, the beginning and the end of the interpolating interval
- $x_1$  and  $x_2$  are the abscissa values at, respectively, the beginning and the end of the interpolating interval
- the  $x$  is the input value provided to the function in the `w32In` argument



## GFLIB\_Lut1D

The interpolating intervals are defined in the table (GFLIB\_Lut1D parameter) provided by the `pw32Table` member of the parameters structure. The table (GFLIB\_Lut1D parameter) contains ordinate values consecutively over the entire interpolating range. The abscissa values are assumed to be defined implicitly by a single interpolating interval length and a table index, while the interpolating index zero is the table element pointed to by the `pw32Table` parameter. The abscissa value is equal to the multiplication of the interpolating index and the interpolating interval length. For example, let's consider the following interpolating table:

Table 3-26: GFLIB\_Lut1D example table

ordinate (y)	interpolating index	abscissa (x)
-0.5	-1	$-1 * (2^{-1})$
<code>pw32Table</code> → 0.0	0	$0 * (2^{-1})$
0.25	1	$1 * (2^{-1})$
0.5	N/A	$2 * (2^{-1})$

Table 3-26 contains four interpolating points. The interpolating interval length in this example is equal to  $2^{-1}$ . The `pw32Table` parameter points to the second row, defining also the interpolating index 0. The x-coordinates of the interpolating points are calculated in the right column. It should be noted that the `pw32Table` pointer does not have to point to the start of the memory area of ordinate values. Therefore, the interpolating index can be positive or negative and does not have to have zero in its range. However, a special algorithm is used to make the computation efficient, under some additional assumptions, as provided below:

- the values of the interpolated function are 32 bits long
- the length of each interpolating interval is equal to  $2^{-n}$ , where  $n$  is an integer in the range of 1, 2, ... 29
- the provided abscissa for interpolation is 32 bits long

The algorithm performs the following steps:

1. Compute the index representing the interval, in which the linear interpolation will be performed:

$$I = x \gg s_{Interval} \quad (3.34)$$

where  $I$  is the interval index and the  $s_{Interval}$  the shift amount provided in the parameters structure as the member `w32ShamIntv1`. The operator  $\gg$  represents the binary arithmetic right shift.

2. Compute the abscissa offset within an interpolating interval:

$$\Delta x = x \ll s_{Offset} \ \& \ 0x7ffffff \quad (3.35)$$

where  $\Delta x$  is the abscissa offset within an interval and the  $s_{Offset}$  is the shift amount provided in the parameters structure. The operators  $\ll$  and  $\&$  represent, respectively, the binary left shift and the bitwise logical conjunction. It should be noted that the computation represents the extraction of some least significant bits of the  $x$  with the sign bit cleared.

3. Compute the interpolated value by the linear interpolation between the the ordinates read from the table at the start and the end of the computed interval. The computed abscissa offset is used for the linear interpolation.

$$\begin{aligned}
 y_1 &= (\text{32-bit data at address pTable}) + 4 \cdot I \\
 y_2 &= (\text{32-bit data at address pTable}) + 4 \cdot (I + 1) \\
 y &= y_1 + (y_2 - y_1) \cdot \Delta x
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{3.36}$$

where  $y$ ,  $y_1$ , and  $y_2$  are, respectively, the interpolated value, the ordinate at the start of the interpolating interval, and the ordinate at the end of the interpolating interval. The `pTable` is the address provided in the parameters structure `pParam->aw32Table`. It should be noted that due to assumption of equidistant data points, division by the interval length is avoided.

Computations are performed with a 16-bit accuracy. Specifically, the 16 least significant bits are ignored in all multiplications. The shift amounts shall be provided in the parameters structure ( `pParam->w32ShamOffset`, `pParam->w32ShamIntvl`). The address of the table with the data, the `pTable`, shall be defined by the parameter structure member `pParam->pw32Table`. The shift amounts, the  $s_{Interval}$  and  $s_{Offset}$ , can be computed with the following formulas:

$$\begin{aligned}
 s_{Interval} &= 31 - |n| \\
 s_{Offset} &= |n|
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{3.37}$$

where  $n$  is the integer defining the length of the interpolating interval in the range of -1, -2, ... -29. The computation of the abscissa offset and the interval index can be viewed also in the following way. The input abscissa value can be divided into two parts. The interval index is composed of the first  $n$  most significant bits of the 32-bit word, after the bit sign. The rest of the bits form the abscissa offset within the interpolating interval. This simple way to calculate the interpolating interval index and the abscissa offset is the consequence of assuming that all interpolating interval lengths equal  $2^{-n}$ . The input abscissa value can be positive or negative. If it is positive, then the ordinate values are read as in the ordinary data array, that is, at or after the data pointer provided in the parameters structure ( `pParam->pw32Table`). However, if it is negative, then the ordinate values are read from the memory, which is located behind the `pParam->pw32Table` pointer.

### 3.12.6 Caution

The function does not check whether the input abscissa value is within the range allowed by the interpolating data table ( `pParam->pw32Table`). If the computed interval index points to data outside the provided data table, then the interpolation will be computed with invalid data.

### 3.12.7 Note

The function performs the linear interpolation with 16-bit accuracy.

### 3.12.8 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

## GFLIB\_Lut1D

### 3.12.9 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

GFLIB_LUT1D_T Param;

// The interpolating interval length is 2^-1
// The interpolating table pointer is defined to point to
// the element 1 (pTable1[1]). The interpolating index can be
// then a value of -1, 0, 1.
Frac32 pTable1[4] = {
    1073741824,    // interpolating index = -1, abscissa = -2^-1
    1342177280,    // interpolating index = 0, abscissa = 0.0
    1610612736,    // interpolating index = 1, abscissa = 2^-1
    1879048192     // interpolating index N/A, abscissa = 1.0
                  // N/A = Not Applicable
};

volatile Frac32 x;
volatile Frac32 y;

int
main(int argc, char *argv[])
{
    Param.pf32Table = &(pTable1[1]);
    Param.w32IntvlOffset = 1;
    Param.w32IntvlIntvl = 31 - 1;

    x = 0;
    y = GFLIB_Lut1D(x, &Param);    // y = 0x50000000

    x = 536870912;
    y = GFLIB_Lut1D(x, &Param);    // y = 0x58000000

    x = 1610612736;
    y = GFLIB_Lut1D(x, &Param);    // y = 0x68000000

    x = 3758096384;
    y = GFLIB_Lut1D(x, &Param);    // y = 0x48000000

    return 0;
}
```

### 3.12.10 Performance

Table 3-27: GFLIB\_Lut1D function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	52/52/46
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	29/27/15
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	29/27/15

### 3.13 GFLIB\_Hyst

#### 3.13.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_HystANSIC(Frac32 f32In, GFLIB_HYST_T *pParam)
```

#### 3.13.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_Hyst(f32In, pParam) \
    GFLIB_HystANSIC(f32In, pParam)
```

#### 3.13.3 Arguments

Table 3-28: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32In	in	Input signal in the form of a 32-bit fixed point fractional number, normalized between $[-1, 1)$ .
GFLIB_HYST_T *	pParam	in	Pointer to the structure with parameters and states of the hysteresis function.

#### 3.13.4 Return

The function returns the value of hysteresis output, which is equal to either *w32OutValOn* or *w32OutValOff* depending on the value of input and the state of the function output in the previous calculation step. The output value is interpreted as a fixed-point 32-bit number, normalized between  $[-1, 1)$ .

#### 3.13.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_HystANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible source code implementation, can be called via the function alias [GFLIB\\_Hyst](#).

The [GFLIB\\_Hyst](#) function provides a computational method for calculation of a hysteresis (relay) function. The function switches the output between the two predefined values stored in the *w32OutValOn* and *w32OutValOff* members of structure [GFLIB\\_HYST\\_T](#). When the value of the input is higher than the upper threshold *w32OutValOn*, then the output value is equal to *w32OutValOn*. When the input value is lower than the lower threshold *w32OutValOff*, then the output value is equal to *w32OutValOff*. When the input value is between the two threshold values then the output retains its value.

$$w32OutState(k) = \begin{cases} w32OutValOn & \text{if } w32In \geq w32HystOn \\ w32OutValOff & \text{if } w32In \leq w32HystOff \\ w32OutState(k-1) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (3.38)$$

## GFLIB\_Hyst

A graphical description of [GFLIB\\_Hyst](#) functionality is shown in Figure 3-12.

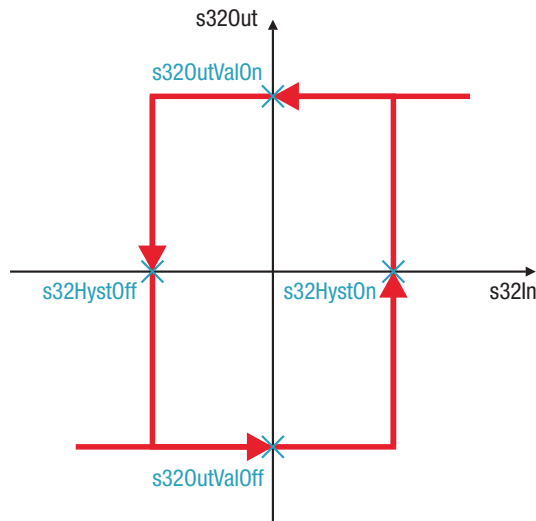


Figure 3-12: Hysteresis function

### 3.13.6 Caution

For correct functionality, `w32HystOn` must be greater than `w32HystOff`.

### 3.13.7 Note

All parameters and states used by the function can be reset during declaration using the [GFLIB\\_HYST\\_DEFAULT](#) macro.

### 3.13.8 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.13.9 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32In;
Frac32 f32Out;

// Definition of one hysteresis instance
GFLIB_HYST_T trMyHyst = GFLIB_HYST_DEFAULT;

void main(void)
{
    // Setting parameters for hysteresis
    trMyHyst.f32HystOn      = FRAC32(0.3);
    trMyHyst.f32HystOff    = FRAC32(-0.3);
    trMyHyst.f32OutValOn   = FRAC32(0.5);
    trMyHyst.f32OutValOff  = FRAC32(-0.5);
}
```

```

// input value = 0.5
f32In = FRAC32(0.5);

// output should be 0x40000000
f32Out = GFLIB_Hyst(f32In, &trMyHyst);
}

```

### 3.13.10 Performance

Table 3-29: GFLIB\_Hyst function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	24/24/24
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	17/15/8
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	17/15/8

## GFLIB\_Ramp

### 3.14 GFLIB\_Ramp

#### 3.14.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_RampANSIC(Frac32 f32In, GFLIB_RAMP_T *pParam)
```

#### 3.14.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_Ramp(in, pParam) \
    GFLIB_RampANSIC(in, pParam)
```

#### 3.14.3 Arguments

Table 3-30: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
<a href="#">GFLIB_RAMP_T</a> *	pParam	in/out	Pointer to the ramp parameters structure
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32In	in	Input argument representing the desired output value.

#### 3.14.4 Return

The function returns a 32-bit value in format Q1.31, which represents the actual ramp output value. This, in time, is approaching the desired (input) value by step increments defined in the pParam structure.

#### 3.14.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_RampANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible source code implementation, can be called via the function alias [GFLIB\\_Ramp](#).

If the desired (input) value is greater than the ramp output value, the function adds the `w32RampUp` value to the actual output value. The output cannot be greater than the desired value.

If the desired value is lower than the actual value, the function subtracts the `w32RampDown` value from the actual value. The output cannot be lower than the desired value.

Functionality of the implemented ramp algorithm can be explained with use of Figure 3-13.

#### 3.14.6 Note

All parameters and states used by the function can be reset during declaration using the [GFLIB\\_RAMP\\_DEFAULT](#) macro.

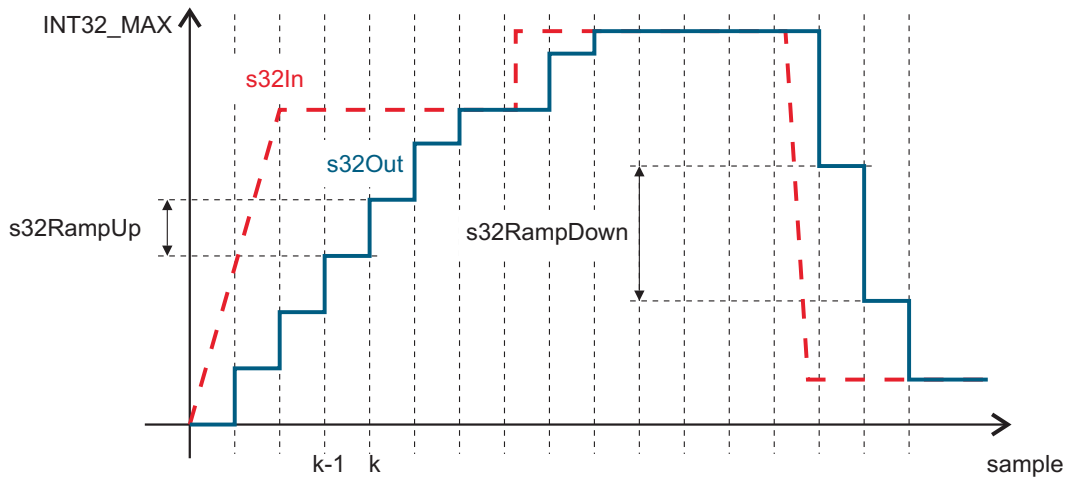


Figure 3-13: GFLIB\_Ramp functionality

### 3.14.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.14.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32In;
Frac32 f32Out;

// Definition of one ramp instance
GFLIB_RAMP_T trMyRamp = GFLIB_RAMP_DEFAULT;

void main(void)
{
    // Setting parameters for hysteresis
    trMyRamp.f32RampUp    = 214748364;
    trMyRamp.f32RampDown  = 71582788;

    // input value = 0.5
    f32In = FRAC32(0.5);

    // output should be 0xCCCCCC
    f32Out = GFLIB_Ramp(f32In, &trMyRamp);
}
```

### 3.14.9 Performance



## GFLIB\_Limit

Table 3-31: [GFLIB\\_Ramp](#) function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	46/46/44
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	53/24/14
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	46/20/14

### 3.15 GFLIB\_Limit

#### 3.15.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_LimitANSIC(Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_LIMIT_T *const pParam)
```

#### 3.15.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_Limit(w32In, pParam) \
    GFLIB_LimitANSIC((w32In), (pParam))
```

#### 3.15.3 Arguments

Table 3-32: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32In	in	Input value.
const *const	<a href="#">GFLIB_LIMIT_T</a> pParam	in	Pointer to the limits structure.

#### 3.15.4 Return

[GFLIB\\_Limit](#) returns the input value, or the upper or lower limit if the input value is beyond these limits.

#### 3.15.5 Description

The function tests whether the input value is within the upper and lower limits. If so, the input value will be returned. If the input value is above the upper limit, the upper limit will be returned. Similarly, if the input value is below the lower limit, the lower limit will be returned. The upper and lower limits can be found in the limits structure, supplied to the function as a pointer `pParam`.

#### 3.15.6 Note

The function assumes that the upper limit is greater than the lower limit. Otherwise, the function returns an undefined value.

### 3.15.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.15.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 x;
Frac32 y;
GFLIB_LIMIT_T LimitParam;

void main(void)
{
    // 0.5 = 0x40000000
    LimitParam.f32LowerLimit = FRAC32(-0.5);

    // -0.5 = 0xc0000000
    LimitParam.f32UpperLimit = FRAC32(0.5);

    // x = 0.75 = 0x60000000
    x = FRAC32(0.75);
    // y should be 0x40000000
    y = GFLIB_Limit(x, &LimitParam);

    // x = -0.75 = 0xa0000000
    x = FRAC32(-0.75);
    // y should be 0xc0000000
    y = GFLIB_Limit(x, &LimitParam);

    // x = 0.25 = 0x20000000
    x = FRAC32(0.25);
    // y should be 0x20000000
    y = GFLIB_Limit(x, &LimitParam);

    return;
}
```

### 3.15.9 Performance

Table 3-33: GFLIB\_Limit function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	20/20/18
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	14/13/7
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	14/13/7

## 3.16 GFLIB\_LowerLimit

### 3.16.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_LowerLimitANSIC(Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_LOWERLIMIT_T *const
pParam)
```

### 3.16.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_LowerLimit(f32In, pParam) \
    GFLIB_LowerLimitANSIC((f32In), (pParam))
```

### 3.16.3 Arguments

Table 3-34: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32In	in	Input value.
const GFLIB_LOWERLIMIT_T *const	pParam	in	Pointer to the limits structure.

### 3.16.4 Return

GFLIB\_LowerLimit returns the input value, or the lower limit if the input value is lower than the lower limit.

### 3.16.5 Description

The function tests whether the input value is above the lower limit. If so, the input value will be returned. Otherwise, if the input value is below the lower limit, the lower limit will be returned. The lower limit can be found in the limits structure, supplied to the function as a pointer `pParam`.

### 3.16.6 Note

The function can be used as an argument of the conditional statement.

### 3.16.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.16.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 x;
Frac32 y;
GFLIB_LOWERLIMIT_T LowerLimitParam;

void main(void)
{
    // 0.5 = 0x40000000
    LowerLimitParam.f32LowerLimit = FRAC32(0.5);

    // x = 0.75 = 0x60000000
    x = FRAC32(0.75);
    // y should be 0x60000000
    y = GFLIB_LowerLimit(x, &LowerLimitParam);

    // x = -0.75 = 0xa0000000
    x = FRAC32(-0.75);
    // y should be 0x40000000
    y = GFLIB_LowerLimit(x, &LowerLimitParam);

    // x = 0.25 = 0x20000000
    x = FRAC32(0.25);
    // y should be 0x40000000
    y = GFLIB_LowerLimit(x, &LowerLimitParam);

    return;
}
```

### 3.16.9 Performance

Table 3-35: GFLIB\_LowerLimit function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	10/10/10
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	11/8/6
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	11/8/6

## GFLIB\_UpperLimit

### 3.17 GFLIB\_UpperLimit

#### 3.17.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_UpperLimitANSIC(Frac32 f32In, const GFLIB_UPPERLIMIT_T *const
pParam)
```

#### 3.17.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_UpperLimit(f32In, pParam) \
    GFLIB_UpperLimitANSIC((f32In), (pParam))
```

#### 3.17.3 Arguments

Table 3-36: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32In	in	Input value.
const GFLIB_UPPERLIMIT_T *const	pParam	in	Pointer to the limits structure.

#### 3.17.4 Return

GFLIB\_UpperLimit returns the input value, or the upper limit if the input value is larger than the upper limit.

#### 3.17.5 Description

The function tests whether the input value is below the upper limit. If so, the input value will be returned. Otherwise, if the input value is above the upper limit, the upper limit will be returned. The upper limits can be found in the limits structure, supplied to the function as a pointer pParam.

#### 3.17.6 Note

The function can be used as an argument of the conditional statement.

#### 3.17.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.17.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 x;
Frac32 y;
GFLIB_UPPERLIMIT_T UpperLimitParam;

void main(void)
{
    // 0.5 = 0x40000000
    UpperLimitParam.f32UpperLimit = FRAC32(0.5);

    // x = 0.75 = 0x60000000
    x = FRAC32(0.75);
    // y should be 0x40000000
    y = GFLIB_UpperLimit(x, &UpperLimitParam);

    // x = -0.75 = 0xa0000000
    x = FRAC32(-0.75);
    // y should be 0xa0000000
    y = GFLIB_UpperLimit(x, &UpperLimitParam);

    // x = 0.25 = 0x20000000
    x = FRAC32(0.25);
    // y should be 0x20000000
    y = GFLIB_UpperLimit(x, &UpperLimitParam);

    return;
}
```

### 3.17.9 Performance

Table 3-37: GFLIB\_UpperLimit function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	10/10/10
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	11/8/5
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	11/8/5

## 3.18 GFLIB\_IntegratorTR

### 3.18.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_IntegratorTRANSIC(Frac32 f32In, GFLIB_INTEGRATOR_TR_T *pParam)
```

### 3.18.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_IntegratorTR(in, pParam) \
    GFLIB_IntegratorTRANSIC(in, pParam)
```

### 3.18.3 Arguments

Table 3-38: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32In	in	Input argument to be integrated.
GFLIB_INTEGRATOR_TR_T *	pParam	in/out	Pointer to the integrator parameters structure

### 3.18.4 Return

The function returns a 32-bit value in format Q1.31, which represents the actual integrated value of the input signal.

### 3.18.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_IntegratorTRANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible source code implementation, can be called via the function alias [GFLIB\\_IntegratorTR](#).

The function [GFLIB\\_IntegratorTR](#) implements a discrete integrator using trapezoidal (Bilinear) transformation. The continuous time domain representation of the integrator is defined as:

$$u(t) = \int_0^t e(t) dt \quad (3.39)$$

The transfer function for this integrator, in a continuous time domain, is described using the Laplace transformation as follows:

$$H(s) = \frac{U(s)}{E(s)} = \frac{1}{s} \quad (3.40)$$

Transforming Equation (3.40) into a digital time domain using Bilinear transformation, leads to the following transfer function:

$$\mathcal{Z}\{H(s)\} = \frac{U(z)}{E(z)} = \frac{T_s + T_s z^{-1}}{2 - 2z^{-1}} \quad (3.41)$$

where  $T_s$  is the sampling period of the system. The discrete implementation of the digital transfer function (3.41) is as follows:

$$u(k) = u(k-1) + e(k) \cdot \frac{T_s}{2} + e(k-1) \cdot \frac{T_s}{2} \quad (3.42)$$

Considering fractional maths implementation, the integrator input and output maximal values (scales) must be known. The discrete implementation is then given as follows:

$$u(k) = u(k-1) + e(k) \cdot \frac{T_s E_{MAX}}{2 U_{MAX}} + e(k-1) \cdot \frac{T_s E_{MAX}}{2 U_{MAX}} \quad (3.43)$$

where  $E_{MAX}$  is the input scale and  $U_{MAX}$  is the output scale. Integrator constant  $C1$  is then defined as:

$$C1_f = \frac{T_s E_{MAX}}{2 U_{MAX}} \quad (3.44)$$

In order to implement the discrete form integrator as in (3.43) on a fixed point platform, the value of  $C1_f$  coefficient must reside in a the fractional range  $[-1, 1)$ . Therefore, scaling must be introduced as follows:

$$w32C1 = C1_f \cdot 2^{-u16NShift} \quad (3.45)$$

The introduced scaling is chosen such that coefficient  $w32C1$  fits into fractional range  $[-1, 1)$ . To simplify the implementation, this scaling is chosen to be a power of 2, so the final scaling is a simple shift operation using the `u16NShift` variable. Hence, the shift is calculated as:

$$u16NShift = \text{ceil} \left( \frac{\log(C1_f)}{\log(2)} \right) \quad (3.46)$$

### 3.18.6 Note

All parameters and states used by the function can be reset during declaration using the `GFLIB_INTEGRATOR_TR_DEFAULT` macro.

### 3.18.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.18.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32In;
Frac32 f32Out;

// Definition of one integrator instance
GFLIB_INTEGRATOR_TR_T trMyIntegrator = GFLIB_INTEGRATOR_TR_DEFAULT;

void main(void)
{
    // Setting parameters for integrator, Ts = 100e-6, E_MAX=U_MAX=1
    trMyIntegrator.f32C1      = FRAC32(100e-6/2);
    trMyIntegrator.u16NShift = 0;
}
```



## GFLIB\_IntegratorTR

```

// input value = 0.5
f32In = FRAC32(0.5);

// output should be 0x0000D1B7
f32Out = GFLIB_IntegratorTR(f32In, &trMyIntegrator);
}

```

### 3.18.9 Performance

Table 3-39: GFLIB\_IntegratorTR function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	136/136/104
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	55/59/20
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	55/59/20

### 3.19 GFLIB\_ControllerPIr

#### 3.19.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_ControllerPIrANSIC(Frac32 f32InErr, GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_R_T
*pParam)
```

#### 3.19.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_ControllerPIr(f32InErr, pParam) \
    GFLIB_ControllerPIrANSIC(f32InErr, pParam)
```

#### 3.19.3 Arguments

Table 3-40: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32InErr	in	Input error signal to the controller is a 32-bit number normalized between $[-1, 1)$ .
GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_R_T *	pParam	in/out	Pointer to the controller parameters structure.

#### 3.19.4 Return

The function returns a 32-bit value in fractional format 1.31, representing the signal to be applied to the controlled system so that the input error is forced to zero.

#### 3.19.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_ControllerPIrANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible source code implementation, can be called via the function alias [GFLIB\\_ControllerPIr](#).

The function [GFLIB\\_ControllerPIr](#) calculates a standard recurrent form of the Proportional-Integral controller, without integral anti-windup. The continuous time domain representation of the PI controller is defined as:

$$u(t) = e(t) \cdot K_P + K_I \int_0^t e(t) dt \tag{3.47}$$

The transfer function for this kind of PI controller, in a continuous time domain, is described using the Laplace transformation as follows:

$$H(s) = \frac{U(s)}{E(s)} = \frac{K_P + sK_I}{s} \tag{3.48}$$

Transforming equation (3.48) into a discrete time domain leads to the following equation:

$$u(k) = u(k - 1) + e(k) \cdot CC1 + e(k - 1) \cdot CC2 \quad (3.49)$$

where  $K_P$  is proportional gain,  $K_I$  is integral gain,  $T_s$  is the sampling period,  $u(k)$  is the controller output,  $e(k)$  is the controller input error signal,  $CC1$  and  $CC2$  are controller coefficients calculated depending on the discretization method used, as shown in Table 3-41.

Table 3-41: Calculation of coefficients CC1 and CC2 using various discretization methods

	Trapezoidal	Bakward Rect.	Forward Rect.
$CC1 =$	$K_p + K_i \frac{T_s}{2}$	$K_p + K_i T_s$	$K_p$
$CC2 =$	$-K_p + K_i \frac{T_s}{2}$	$-K_p$	$-K_p + K_i T_s$

In order to implement the discrete equation of the controller (3.49) on the fixed point arithmetic platform, the maximal values (scales) of the input and output signals:  $E^{MAX}$  is maximal value of the controller input error signal  $U^{MAX}$  is maximal value of the controller output signal have to be known beforehand. This is essential for correct casting of the physical signal values into fixed point values  $[-1, 1)$ . Then the fractional representation  $[-1, 1)$  of both input and output signals is obtained as follows:

$$e_f(k) = \frac{e(k)}{E^{MAX}} \quad (3.50)$$

$$u_f(k) = \frac{u(k)}{U^{MAX}} \quad (3.51)$$

The resulting controller discrete time domain equation in fixed point fractional representation is therefore given as:

$$u_f(k) \cdot U^{MAX} = u_f(k - 1) \cdot U^{MAX} + e_f(k) \cdot E^{MAX} \cdot CC1 + e_f(k - 1) \cdot E^{MAX} \cdot CC2 \quad (3.52)$$

which can be rearranged into the following form:

$$u_f(k) = u_f(k - 1) + e_f(k) \cdot CC1_f + e_f(k - 1) \cdot CC2_f \quad (3.53)$$

where

$$CC1_f = CC1 \cdot \frac{E^{MAX}}{U^{MAX}} \quad , \quad CC2_f = CC2 \cdot \frac{E^{MAX}}{U^{MAX}} \quad (3.54)$$

are the controller coefficients, adapted according to the input and output scale values. In order to implement both coefficients as fractional numbers, both  $CC1_f$  and  $CC2_f$  must reside in the fractional range  $[-1, 1)$ . However, depending on values

- $E^{MAX}$  - maximal value of the controller input error signal
- $U^{MAX}$  - maximal value of the controller output signal fractional range. Therefore, a scaling of  $CC1_f, CC2_f$  is introduced as:

$$f32CC1sc = CC1_f \cdot 2^{-u16NShift} \quad (3.55)$$

$$f32CC2sc = CC2_f \cdot 2^{-u16NShift} \quad (3.56)$$

The introduced scaling shift  $u16NShift$  is chosen so that both coefficients  $f32CC1sc$ ,  $f32CC2sc$  reside in the range  $[-1, 1)$ . To simplify the implementation, this scaling shift is chosen to be a power of 2, so the final scaling is a simple shift operation. Moreover, the scaling shift cannot be a negative number, so the operation of scaling is always to scale numbers with an absolute value larger than 1 down to fit in the range  $[-1, 1)$ .

$$u16NShift = \max \left( \text{ceil} \left( \frac{\log(\text{abs}(CC1_f))}{\log(2)} \right), \text{ceil} \left( \frac{\log(\text{abs}(CC2_f))}{\log(2)} \right) \right) \quad (3.57)$$

The final, scaled, fractional equation of a recurrent PI controller on a 32-bit fixed point platform is therefore implemented as follows:

$$u_f(k) \cdot (2^{-u16NShift}) = u_f(k-1) \cdot (2^{-u16NShift}) + e_f(k) \cdot f32CC1sc + e_f(k-1) \cdot f32CC2sc \quad (3.58)$$

where:

- $u_f(k)$  - fractional representation  $[-1, 1)$  of the controller output
- $e_f(k)$  - fractional representation  $[-1, 1)$  of the controller input (error)
- $f32CC1sc$  - fractional representation  $[-1, 1)$  of the 1st controller coefficient
- $f32CC2sc$  - fractional representation  $[-1, 1)$  of the 2nd controller coefficient
- $u16NShift$  - in range  $[0, 31]$  - is chosen such that both coefficients  $f32CC1sc$  and  $f32CC2sc$  are in the range  $[-1, 1)$

### 3.19.6 Note

All controller parameters and states can be reset during declaration using the [GFLIB\\_CONTROLLER\\_PI\\_R\\_DEFAULT](#) macro.

### 3.19.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.19.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32InErr;
Frac32 f32Output;

GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_R_T trMyPI = GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_R_DEFAULT;

void main(void)
{
    // input error = 0.25
    f32InErr = FRAC32(0.25);
}
```

## GFLIB\_ControllerPIr

```

// controller parameters
trMyPI.f32CC1sc      = FRAC32(0.01);
trMyPI.f32CC2sc      = FRAC32(0.02);
trMyPI.u16NShift     = 1;

// output should be 0x00A3D70A
f32Output = GFLIB_ControllerPIr(f32InErr,&trMyPI);
}

```

### 3.19.9 Performance

Table 3-42: GFLIB\_ControllerPIr function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	110/110/110
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	59/41/22
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	59/41/22

## 3.20 GFLIB\_ControllerPip

### 3.20.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_ControllerPipANSIC(Frac32 f32InErr, GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_P_T
*pParam)
```

### 3.20.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_ControllerPip(f32InErr, pParam) \
    GFLIB_ControllerPipANSIC(f32InErr, pParam)
```

### 3.20.3 Arguments

Table 3-43: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32InErr	in	Input error signal to the controller is a 32-bit number normalized between $[-1, 1)$ .
GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_P_T *	pParam	in/out	Pointer to the controller parameters structure.

### 3.20.4 Return

The function returns a 32-bit value in format 1.31, representing the signal to be applied to the controlled system so that the input error is forced to zero.

### 3.20.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_ControllerPipANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible implementation, can be called via the function alias [GFLIB\\_ControllerPip](#).

A PI controller attempts to correct the error between a measured process variable and a desired set point by calculating and then outputting a corrective action that can adjust the process accordingly. The [GFLIB\\_ControllerPipANSIC](#) function calculates the Proportional-Integral (PI) algorithm according to the equations below. The PI algorithm is implemented in the parallel (non-interacting) form, allowing the user to define the P and I parameters independently without interaction. An anti-windup strategy is not implemented in this function. Nevertheless, the accumulator overflow is prevented by correct saturation of the controller output at maximal values:  $[-1, 1)$  in fractional interpretation, or  $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$  in integer interpretation. The PI algorithm in the continuous time domain can be described as:

$$u(t) = e(t) \cdot K_P + K_I \int_0^t e(t) dt \tag{3.59}$$

where

## GFLIB\_ControllerPlp

- $e(t)$  - input error in the continuous time domain
- $u(t)$  - controller output in the continuous time domain
- $K_P$  - proportional gain
- $K_I$  - integral gain

Equation (3.59) can be described using the Laplace transformation as follows:

$$H(s) = \frac{U(s)}{E(s)} = K_P + K_I \frac{1}{s} \quad (3.60)$$

The proportional part of Equation (3.60) is transformed into the discrete time domain simply as:

$$u_P(k) = K_P \cdot e(k) \quad (3.61)$$

Transforming the integral part of Equation (3.60) into a discrete time domain using the Bilinear method, also known as trapezoidal approximation, leads to the following equation:

$$u_I(k) = u_I(k-1) + e(k) \cdot \frac{K_I T_s}{2} + e(k-1) \cdot \frac{K_I T_s}{2} \quad (3.62)$$

where  $T_s$  [sec] is the sampling time. In order to implement the discrete equation of the controller on the fixed point arithmetic platform, the maximal values (scales) of the input and output signals have to be known beforehand. This is essential for correct casting of the physical signal values into fixed point values:

- $E^{MAX}$  - maximal value of the controller input error signal
- $U^{MAX}$  - maximal value of the controller output signal

The fractional representation of both input and output signals, normalized between  $[-1, 1)$ , is obtained as follows:

$$e_f(k) = \frac{e(k)}{E^{MAX}} \quad (3.63)$$

$$u_f(k) = \frac{u(k)}{U^{MAX}} \quad (3.64)$$

Applying such scaling (normalization) on the proportional term of Equation (3.61) results in:

$$u_{P_f}(k) = e_f(k) \cdot K_{P\_sc} \quad (3.65)$$

where  $K_{P\_sc} = K_P \cdot \frac{E^{MAX}}{U^{MAX}}$  is the proportional gain parameter considering input/output scaling. Analogically, scaling the integral term of Equation (3.62) results in:

$$u_{I_f}(k) = u_{I_f}(k-1) + K_{I\_sc} \cdot e_f(k) + K_{I\_sc} \cdot e_f(k-1) \quad (3.66)$$

where  $K_{I\_sc} = \frac{K_I T_s}{2} \cdot \frac{E^{MAX}}{U^{MAX}}$  is the integral gain parameter considering input/output scaling. The sum of the scaled proportional and integral terms gives a complete equation of the controller. The problem is, however, that either of the gain parameters  $K_{P\_sc}, K_{I\_sc}$  can be out of the  $[-1, 1)$  range, hence can not be directly interpreted as fractional values. To overcome this, it is necessary to scale these gain parameters using the shift values as follows:

$$f32PropGain = K_{P\_sc} \cdot 2^{w16PropGainShift} \quad (3.67)$$

and

$$f32IntegGain = K_{I_{sc}} \cdot 2^{w16IntegGainShift} \quad (3.68)$$

where

- *f16PropGain* is the scaled value of proportional gain  $[-1, 1]$
- *w16PropGainShift* is the scaling shift for proportional gain  $[-31, 31]$
- *f16IntegGain* is the scaled value of integral gain  $[-1, 1]$
- *w16IntegGainShift* is the scaling shift for integral gain  $[-31, 31]$

### 3.20.6 Note

All controller parameters and states can be reset during declaration using the `GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_P_DEFAULT` macro.

### 3.20.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.20.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32InErr;
Frac32 f32Output;

GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_P_T trMyPI = GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_P_DEFAULT;

void main(void)
{
    // input error = 0.25
    f32InErr = FRAC32(0.25);

    // controller parameters
    trMyPI.f32PropGain      = FRAC32(0.01);
    trMyPI.f32IntegGain     = FRAC32(0.02);
    trMyPI.w16PropGainShift = 1;
    trMyPI.w16IntegGainShift = 1;
    trMyPI.f32IntegPartK_1 = 0;

    // output should be 0x01EB851E
    f32Output = GFLIB_ControllerPip(f32InErr, &trMyPI);
}
```

### 3.20.9 Performance



## GFLIB\_ControllerPipAW

Table 3-44: GFLIB\_ControllerPip function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	222/222/188
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	83/78/48
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	83/78/48

## 3.21 GFLIB\_ControllerPipAW

### 3.21.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GFLIB_ControllerPipAWANSIC(Frac32 f32InErr, GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PIAW_P_T *pParam)
```

### 3.21.2 Alias

```
#define GFLIB_ControllerPipAW(f32InErr, pParam) \
    GFLIB_ControllerPipAWANSIC(f32InErr, pParam)
```

### 3.21.3 Arguments

Table 3-45: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32InErr	in	Input error signal to the controller is a 32-bit number normalized between $[-1, 1)$ .
GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PIAW_P_T *	pParam	in/out	Pointer to the controller parameters structure.

### 3.21.4 Return

The function returns a 32-bit value in format 1.31, representing the signal to be applied to the controlled system so that the input error is forced to zero.

### 3.21.5 Description

The [GFLIB\\_ControllerPipAWANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible implementation, can be called via the function alias [GFLIB\\_ControllerPipAW](#).

A PI controller attempts to correct the error between a measured process variable and a desired set-point by calculating and then outputting a corrective action that can adjust the process accordingly. The [GFLIB\\_ControllerPipAWANSIC](#) function calculates the Proportional-Integral (PI) algorithm according to the equations below. The PI algorithm is implemented in the

parallel (non-interacting) form, allowing the user to define the P and I parameters independently without interaction. The controller output is limited and the limit values (*f32UpperLimit* and *f32LowerLimit*) are defined by the user. The PI controller algorithm also returns a limitation flag. This flag (*u16LimitFlag*) is a member of the structure of the PI controller parameters - **GFLIB\_CONTROLLER\_PIAW\_P\_T**. If the PI controller output reaches the upper or lower limit then *u16LimitFlag* = 1, otherwise *u16LimitFlag* = 0 (integer values). An anti-windup strategy is implemented by limiting the integral portion. The integral state is limited by the controller limits in the same way as the controller output. The PI algorithm in the continuous time domain can be described as:

$$u(t) = e(t) \cdot K_P + K_I \int_0^t e(t) dt \quad (3.69)$$

where

- *e(t)* is input error in the continuous time domain
- *u(t)* is controller output in the continuous time domain
- *K<sub>P</sub>* is proportional gain
- *K<sub>I</sub>* is integral gain

Equation (3.69) can be described using the Laplace transformation as follows:

$$H(s) = \frac{U(s)}{E(s)} = K_P + K_I \frac{1}{s} \quad (3.70)$$

The proportional part of equation (3.70) is transformed into the discrete time domain simply as:

$$u_P(k) = K_P \cdot e(k) \quad (3.71)$$

Transforming the integral part of equation (3.70) into a discrete time domain using the Bilinear method, also known as trapezoidal approximation, leads to the following equation:

$$u_I(k) = u_I(k-1) + e(k) \cdot \frac{K_I T_s}{2} + e(k-1) \cdot \frac{K_I T_s}{2} \quad (3.72)$$

where *T<sub>s</sub>* [sec] is the sampling time. In order to implement the discrete equation of the controller on the fixed point arithmetic platform, the maximal values (scales) of input and output signals have to be known a priori. This is essential for correct casting of the physical signal values into fixed point values:

- *E<sup>MAX</sup>* - maximal value of the controller input error signal
- *U<sup>MAX</sup>* - maximal value of the controller output signal

The fractional representation of both input and output signals, normalized between [-1, 1), is obtained as follows:

$$e_f(k) = \frac{e(k)}{E^{MAX}} \quad (3.73)$$

$$u_f(k) = \frac{u(k)}{U^{MAX}} \quad (3.74)$$

## GFLIB\_ControllerPipAW

Applying such scaling (normalization) on the proportional term of Equation (3.71) results in:

$$u_{Pf}(k) = e_f(k) \cdot K_{P\_sc} \quad (3.75)$$

where  $K_{P\_sc} = K_P \cdot \frac{E^{MAX}}{U^{MAX}}$  is the proportional gain parameter considering input/output scaling. Analogically, scaling the integral term of Equation (3.72) results in:

$$u_{If}(k) = u_{If}(k-1) + K_{I\_sc} \cdot e_f(k) + K_{I\_sc} \cdot e_f(k-1) \quad (3.76)$$

where  $K_{I\_sc} = \frac{K_I T_s}{2} \cdot \frac{E^{MAX}}{U^{MAX}}$  is the integral gain parameter considering input/output scaling. The sum of the scaled proportional and integral terms gives a complete equation of the controller. The problem is however, that either of the gain parameters  $K_{P\_sc}, K_{I\_sc}$  can be out of the  $[-1, 1]$  range, hence can not be directly interpreted as fractional values. To overcome this, it is necessary to scale these gain parameters using the shift values as follows:

$$f32PropGain = K_{P\_sc} \cdot 2^{w16PropGainShift} \quad (3.77)$$

$$f32IntegGain = K_{I\_sc} \cdot 2^{w16IntegGainShift} \quad (3.78)$$

where

- $w16PropGain$  is the scaled value of proportional gain  $[-1, 1]$
- $w16PropGainShift$  is the scaling shift for proportional gain  $[-31, 31]$
- $w16IntegGain$  is the scaled value of integral gain  $[-1, 1]$
- $w16IntegGainShift$  is the scaling shift for integral gain  $[-31, 31]$

The output signal limitation is implemented in this controller. The actual output  $u(k)$  is bounded not to exceed the given limit values  $f32UpperLimit, f32LowerLimit$ . This is due to either the bounded power of the actuator or to the physical constraints of the plant.

$$u_f(k) = \begin{cases} f32UpperLimit & \rightarrow u_f(k) \geq f32UpperLimit \\ u_f(k) & \rightarrow f32LowerLimit < u_f(k) < f32UpperLimit \\ f32LowerLimit & \rightarrow u_f(k) \leq f32LowerLimit \end{cases}$$

The bounds are described by a limitation element Equation (3.79). When the bounds are exceeded the non-linear saturation characteristic will take effect and influence the dynamic behaviour. The described limitation is implemented on the integral part accumulator (limitation during the calculation) and on the overall controller output. Therefore, if the limitation occurs, the controller output is clipped to its bounds and the wind-up occurrence of the accumulator portion is avoided by saturating the actual sum.

### 3.21.6 Note

All controller parameters and states can be reset during declaration using the [GFLIB\\_CONTROLLER\\_PIAW\\_P\\_DEFAULT](#) macro.

### 3.21.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 3.21.8 Code Example

```
#include "gflib.h"

Frac32 f32InErr;
Frac32 f32Output;

GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PIAW_P_T trMyPI = GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PIAW_P_DEFAULT;

void main(void)
{
    // input error = 0.25
    f32InErr = FRAC32(0.25);

    // controller parameters
    trMyPI.f32PropGain = FRAC32(0.01);
    trMyPI.f32IntegGain = FRAC32(0.02);
    trMyPI.w16PropGainShift = 1;
    trMyPI.w16IntegGainShift = 1;
    trMyPI.f32IntegPartK_1 = 0;
    trMyPI.f32UpperLimit = FRAC32(1.0);
    trMyPI.f32LowerLimit = FRAC32(-1.0);

    // output should be 0x01EB851E
    f32Output = GFLIB_ControllerPipAW(f32InErr, &trMyPI);
}
```

### 3.21.9 Performance

Table 3-46: GFLIB\_ControllerPipAW function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	270/270/232
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	125/114/63
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	111/96/58

# CHAPTER 4: GMCLIB

## 4.1 Function API Overview

- void `GMCLIB_Clark` ( `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T` \* pOut, const `MCLIB_3_COOR_SYST_T` \*const pln)  
*Clarke Transformation algorithm implementation*
- void `GMCLIB_ClarkInv` ( `MCLIB_3_COOR_SYST_T` \* pOut, const `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T` \*const pln)  
*Inverse Clarke Transformation algorithm implementation*
- void `GMCLIB_Park` ( `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T` \* pOut, const `MCLIB_ANGLE_T` \*const plnAngle, const `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T` \*const pln)  
*Park Transformation algorithm implementation*
- void `GMCLIB_ParkInv` ( `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T` \* pOut, const `MCLIB_ANGLE_T` \*const plnAngle, const `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T` \*const pln)  
*Inverse Park Transformation algorithm implementation*
- void `GMCLIB_ElimDcBusRip` ( `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T` \* pOut, const `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T` \*const pln, const `GMCLIB_ELIM_DC_BUS_RIP_T` \*const pParam)  
*Elimination of the DC bus voltage ripple*
- void `GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSM` ( `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T` \* pUdqDec, const `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T` \*const pUdq, const `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T` \*const pldq, `Frac32` f32AngularVel, const `MCLIB_DECOUPLING_PMSM_PARAM_T` \*const pParam)  
*Calculates the cross-coupling voltages to eliminate the dq axis coupling causing non-linearity of the field oriented control*
- `UWord32` `GMCLIB_SvmStd` ( `MCLIB_3_COOR_SYST_T` \* pOut, const `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T` \*const pln)  
*Function alias GMCLIB\_SvmStd*
- bool `GMCLIB_VectorLimit` ( `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T` \*const pOut, const `MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T` \*const pln, const `GMCLIB_VectorLimit_T` \*const pParam)  
*Limit magnitude of the input vector*

## 4.2 GMCLIB\_Clark

### 4.2.1 Declaration

```
void GMCLIB_ClarkANSIC(MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T *pOut, const
MCLIB_3_COOR_SYST_T *const pIn)
```

### 4.2.2 Alias

```
#define GMCLIB_Clark(pOut, pIn) \
    GMCLIB_ClarkANSIC(pOut, pIn)
```

### 4.2.3 Arguments

Table 4-1: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
<a href="#">MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T</a> *	pOut	out	Pointer to the structure containing data of the two-phase stationary orthogonal system ( $\alpha - \beta$ ).
const <a href="#">MCLIB_3_COOR_SYST_T</a> *const	pIn	in	Pointer to the structure containing data of the three-phase stationary system ( $sA - sB - sC$ ).

### 4.2.4 Return

The function returns data type void.

### 4.2.5 Description

The [GMCLIB\\_ClarkANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible implementation, can be called via the function alias [GMCLIB\\_Clark](#). The Clarke Transformation is used to transform values from the three-phase (A-B-C) coordinate system to the two-phase (alpha-beta) orthogonal coordinate system, according to the following equations:

$$i_{\alpha} = i_{sA} \quad (4.1)$$

$$i_{\beta} = (i_{sB} - i_{sC}) \cdot \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \quad (4.2)$$

where it is assumed that the axis  $sA$  (axis of the first phase) and the axis  $\alpha$  are in the same direction.

### 4.2.6 Note

The inputs and the outputs are normalized to fit in the range  $[-1, 1)$ .

## GMCLIB\_Clark

### 4.2.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 4.2.8 Code Example

```
#include "gmclib.h"

MCLIB_3_COOR_SYST_T tr32Abc;
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T tr32AlBe;

void main(void)
{
    // input phase A = sin(45) = 0.707106781
    // input phase B = sin(45 + 120) = 0.258819045
    // input phase C = sin(45 - 120) = -0.965925826
    tr32Abc.f32A = FRAC32(0.707106781);
    tr32Abc.f32B = FRAC32(0.258819045);
    tr32Abc.f32C = FRAC32(-0.965925826);

    // output should be
    // tr32AlBe.f32Alpha ~ alpha = 0x5A827999
    // tr32AlBe.f32Beta ~ beta = 0x5A827999
    GMCLIB_Clark(&tr32AlBe, &tr32Abc);
}
```

### 4.2.9 Performance

Table 4-2: GMCLIB\_Clark function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	60/60/48
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	52/37/18
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	52/37/18

## 4.3 GMCLIB\_ClarkInv

### 4.3.1 Declaration

```
void GMCLIB_ClarkInvANSIC(MCLIB_3_COOR_SYST_T *pOut, const
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T *const pIn)
```

### 4.3.2 Alias

```
#define GMCLIB_ClarkInv(pOut, pIn) \
    GMCLIB_ClarkInvANSIC(pOut, pIn)
```

### 4.3.3 Arguments

Table 4-3: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
<a href="#">MCLIB_3_COOR_SYST_T</a> *	pOut	out	Pointer to the structure containing data of the three-phase stationary system ( $sA - sB - sC$ ).
const <a href="#">MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T</a> *const	pIn	in	Pointer to the structure containing data of the two-phase stationary orthogonal system ( $\alpha - \beta$ ).

### 4.3.4 Return

The function returns data type void.

### 4.3.5 Description

The [GMCLIB\\_ClarkInvANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible implementation, can be called via the function alias [GMCLIB\\_ClarkInv](#). The [GMCLIB\\_ClarkInv](#) function calculates the Inverse Clarke transformation, which is used to transform values from the two-phase ( $\alpha - \beta$ ) orthogonal coordinate system to the three-phase ( $sA - sB - sC$ ) coordinate system, according to these equations:

$$i_{sA} = i_{\alpha} \quad (4.3)$$

$$i_{sB} = -\frac{1}{2} \cdot i_{\alpha} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \cdot i_{\beta} \quad (4.4)$$

$$i_{sC} = -\frac{1}{2} \cdot i_{\alpha} - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \cdot i_{\beta} \quad (4.5)$$



## GMCLIB\_ClarkInv

### 4.3.6 Note

The inputs and the outputs are normalized to fit in the range  $[-1, 1)$ .

### 4.3.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 4.3.8 Code Example

```
#include "gmclib.h"

MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T tr32AlBe;
MCLIB_3_COOR_SYST_T tr32Abc;

void main(void)
{
    // input phase alpha = sin(45) = 0.707106781
    // input phase beta = cos(45) = 0.707106781
    tr32AlBe.f32Alpha = FRAC32(0.707106781);
    tr32AlBe.f32Beta = FRAC32(0.707106781);

    // output should be
    // tr32Abc.f32A ~ phA = 0x5A827999
    // tr32Abc.f32B ~ phB = 0x2120FB83
    // tr32Abc.f32C ~ phC = 0x845C8AE5
    GMCLIB_ClarkInv(&tr32Abc,&tr32AlBe);
}
```

### 4.3.9 Performance

Table 4-4: GMCLIB\_ClarkInv function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	44/44/50
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	45/26/19
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	45/26/19

## 4.4 GMCLIB\_Park

### 4.4.1 Declaration

```
void GMCLIB_ParkANSIC(MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T *pOut, const MCLIB_ANGLE_T *const
pInAngle, const MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T *const pIn)
```

### 4.4.2 Alias

```
#define GMCLIB_Park(pOut, pInAngle, pIn) \
    GMCLIB_ParkANSIC(pOut, pInAngle, pIn)
```

### 4.4.3 Arguments

Table 4-5: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
<a href="#">MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T</a> *	pOut	out	Pointer to the structure containing data of the two-phase rotational orthogonal system ( $d - q$ ).
const <a href="#">MCLIB_ANGLE_T</a> *const	pInAngle	in	Pointer to the structure where the values of the sine and cosine of the rotor position are stored.
const <a href="#">MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T</a> *const	pIn	in	Pointer to the structure containing data of the two-phase stationary orthogonal system ( $\alpha - \beta$ ).

### 4.4.4 Return

The function returns data type void.

### 4.4.5 Description

The [GMCLIB\\_ParkANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible implementation, can be called via the function alias [GMCLIB\\_Park](#). The [GMCLIB\\_Park](#) function calculates the Park Transformation, which transforms values (flux, voltage, current) from the two-phase ( $\alpha - \beta$ ) stationary orthogonal coordinate system to the two-phase ( $d - q$ ) rotational orthogonal coordinate system, according to these equations:

$$d = \cos(\theta_e) \cdot \alpha + \sin(\theta_e) \cdot \beta \quad (4.6)$$

$$q = -\sin(\theta_e) \cdot \alpha + \cos(\theta_e) \cdot \beta \quad (4.7)$$

where  $\theta_e$  represents the electrical position of the rotor flux.

## GMCLIB\_Park

### 4.4.6 Note

The inputs and the outputs are normalized to fit in the range  $[-1, 1)$ .

### 4.4.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 4.4.8 Code Example

```
#include "gmclib.h"

MCLIB_ANGLE_T tr32Angle;
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T tr32AlBe;
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T tr32Dq;

void main(void)
{
    // input angle sin(60) = 0.866025403
    // input angle cos(60) = 0.5
    tr32Angle.f32Sin = FRAC32(0.866025403);
    tr32Angle.f32Cos = FRAC32(0.5);

    // input alpha = 0.123
    // input beta = 0.654
    tr32AlBe.f32Alpha = FRAC32(0.123);
    tr32AlBe.f32Beta = FRAC32(0.654);

    // output should be
    // tr32Dq.f32D ~ d = 0x505E6455
    // tr32Dq.f32Q ~ q = 0x1C38ABDC
    GMCLIB_Park(&tr32Dq,&tr32Angle,&tr32AlBe);
}
```

### 4.4.9 Performance

Table 4-6: GMCLIB\_Park function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	186/186/126
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	81/89/39
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	81/89/39

## 4.5 GMCLIB\_ParkInv

### 4.5.1 Declaration

```
void GMCLIB_ParkInvANSIC(MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T *pOut, const
MCLIB_ANGLE_T *const pInAngle, const MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T *const pIn)
```

### 4.5.2 Alias

```
#define GMCLIB_ParkInv(pOut, pInAngle, pIn) \
    GMCLIB_ParkInvANSIC(pOut, pInAngle, pIn)
```

### 4.5.3 Arguments

Table 4-7: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
<a href="#">MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T</a> *	pOut	out	Pointer to the structure containing data of the two-phase stationary orthogonal system ( $\alpha - \beta$ ).
const <a href="#">MCLIB_ANGLE_T</a> *const	pInAngle	in	Pointer to the structure where the values of the sine and cosine of the rotor position are stored.
const <a href="#">MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T</a> *const	pIn	in	Pointer to the structure containing data of the two-phase rotational orthogonal system ( $d - q$ ).

### 4.5.4 Return

The function returns data type void.

### 4.5.5 Description

The [GMCLIB\\_ParkInvANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible implementation, can be called via the function alias [GMCLIB\\_ParkInv](#). The [GMCLIB\\_ParkInv](#) function calculates the Inverse Park Transformation, which transforms quantities (flux, voltage, current) from the two-phase ( $d - q$ ) rotational orthogonal coordinate system to the two-phase ( $\alpha - \beta$ ) stationary orthogonal coordinate system, according to these equations:

$$\alpha = \cos(\theta_e) \cdot d - \sin(\theta_e) \cdot q \quad (4.8)$$

$$\beta = \sin(\theta_e) \cdot d + \cos(\theta_e) \cdot q \quad (4.9)$$

## GMCLIB\_ParkInv

### 4.5.6 Note

The inputs and the outputs are normalized to fit in the range  $[-1, 1)$ .

### 4.5.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 4.5.8 Code Example

```
#include "gmclib.h"

MCLIB_ANGLE_T tr32Angle;
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T tr32Dq;
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T tr32AlBe;

void main(void)
{
    // input angle sin(60) = 0.866025403
    // input angle cos(60) = 0.5
    tr32Angle.f32Sin = FRAC32(0.866025403);
    tr32Angle.f32Cos = FRAC32(0.5);

    // input d = 0.123
    // input q = 0.654
    tr32Dq.f32D = FRAC32(0.123);
    tr32Dq.f32Q = FRAC32(0.654);

    // output should be
    // tr32AlBe.f32Alpha ~ alpha = 0xBF601273
    // tr32AlBe.f32Beta ~ beta = 0x377D9EE4
    GMCLIB_ParkInv(&tr32AlBe, &tr32Angle, &tr32Dq);
}
```

### 4.5.9 Performance

Table 4-8: GMCLIB\_ParkInv function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	186/186/126
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	83/88/38
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	83/88/38

## 4.6 GMCLIB\_ElimDcBusRip

### 4.6.1 Declaration

```
void GMCLIB_ElimDcBusRipANSIC(MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T *pOut, const
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T *const pIn, const GMCLIB_ELIM_DC_BUS_RIP_T *const
pParam)
```

### 4.6.2 Alias

```
#define GMCLIB_ElimDcBusRip(pOut, pIn, pParams) \
    GMCLIB_ElimDcBusRipANSIC(pOut, pIn, pParams)
```

### 4.6.3 Arguments

Table 4-9: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
<a href="#">MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_-ALPHA_BETA_T</a> *	pOut	out	Pointer to the structure with direct ( $\alpha$ ) and quadrature ( $\beta$ ) components of the required stator voltage vector recalculated so as to compensate for voltage ripples on the DC bus.
const <a href="#">MCLIB_2_COOR_-SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T</a> *const	pIn	in	Pointer to the structure with direct ( $\alpha$ ) and quadrature ( $\beta$ ) components of the required stator voltage vector before compensation of voltage ripples on the DC bus.
const <a href="#">GMCLIB_ELIM_DC_-BUS_RIP_T</a> *const	pParam	in	Pointer to the parameters structure.

### 4.6.4 Return

The function returns data type void.

### 4.6.5 Description

The [GMCLIB\\_ElimDcBusRipANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible implementation, can be called via the function alias [GMCLIB\\_ElimDcBusRip](#). The [GMCLIB\\_ElimDcBusRip](#) function provides a computational method for the recalculation of the direct ( $\alpha$ ) and quadrature ( $\beta$ ) components of the required stator voltage vector, so as to compensate for voltage ripples on the DC bus of the power stage. Considering a cascaded type structure of the control system in a standard motor control application, the required voltage vector to be applied on motor terminals is generated by a set of controllers (usually P, PI or PID) only with knowledge of

## GMCLIB\_ElimDcBusRip

the maximal value of the DC bus voltage. The amplitude and phase of the required voltage vector are then used by the pulse width modulator (PWM) for generation of appropriate duty-cycles for the power inverter switches. Obviously, the amplitude of the generated phase voltage (averaged across one switching period) does not only depend on the actual on/off times of the given phase switches and the maximal value of the DC bus voltage. The actual amplitude of the phase voltage is also directly affected by the actual value of the available DC bus voltage. Therefore, any variations in amplitude of the actual DC bus voltage must be accounted for by modifying the amplitude of the required voltage so that the output phase voltage remains unaffected. For a better understanding, let's consider the following two simple examples:

### Example 1

- amplitude of the required phase voltage  $U_{req} = 50[V]$
- maximal amplitude of the DC bus voltage  $U_{DC\_BUS\_MAX} = 100[V]$
- actual amplitude of the DC bus voltage  $U_{DC\_BUS\_ACTUAL} = 100[V]$
- voltage to be applied to the PWM modulator to generate  $U_{req} = 50[V]$  on the inverter phase output:

$$U_{req\_new} = \frac{U_{req} \cdot U_{DC\_BUS\_MAX}}{U_{DC\_BUS\_ACTUAL}} = 50V \quad (4.10)$$

### Example 2:

- amplitude of the required phase voltage  $U_{req} = 50[V]$
- maximal amplitude of the DC bus voltage  $U_{DC\_BUS\_MAX} = 100[V]$
- actual amplitude of the DC bus voltage  $U_{DC\_BUS\_ACTUAL} = 90[V]$
- voltage to be applied to the PWM modulator to generate  $U_{req} = 50[V]$  on the inverter phase output:

$$U_{req\_new} = \frac{U_{req} \cdot U_{DC\_BUS\_MAX}}{U_{DC\_BUS\_ACTUAL}} = 55.5V \quad (4.11)$$

The imperfections of the DC bus voltage are compensated for by the modification of amplitudes of the direct-  $\alpha$  and the quadrature-  $\beta$  components of the stator reference voltage vector. The following formulas are used:

- for the  $\alpha$ -component:

$$u_{\alpha}^* = \begin{cases} \frac{w32ModIndex \cdot u_{\alpha}}{w32ArgDcBusMsr/2} & \text{if } abs(w32ModIndex \cdot u_{\alpha}) < \frac{w32ArgDcBusMsr}{2} \\ sign(u_{\alpha}) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (4.12)$$

- for the  $\beta$ -component:

$$u_{\beta}^* = \begin{cases} \frac{w32ModIndex \cdot u_{\beta}}{w32ArgDcBusMsr/2} & \text{if } abs(w32ModIndex \cdot u_{\beta}) < \frac{w32ArgDcBusMsr}{2} \\ sign(u_{\beta}) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \quad (4.13)$$

Set of General Math and Motor Control Functions for Cortex M4 Core, Rev. 1.4

where:  $w32ModIndex$  is the inverse modulation index,  $w32ArgDcBusMsr$  is the measured DC bus voltage, the  $u_\alpha$  and  $u_\beta$  are the input voltages, and the  $u_\alpha^*$  and  $u_\beta^*$  are the output duty-cycle ratios. The  $w32ModIndex$  and  $w32ArgDcBusMsr$  are supplied to the function within the parameters structure through its members. The  $u_\alpha$ ,  $u_\beta$  correspond respectively to the `f32Alpha` and `f32Beta` members of the input structure, and the  $u_\alpha^*$  and  $u_\beta^*$  respectively to the `f32Alpha` and `f32Beta` members of the output structure. It should be noted that although the modulation index (`w32ModIndex`) is assumed to be equal to or greater than zero, the possible values are restricted to those values resulting from the use of Space Vector Modulation techniques.

In order to correctly handle the discontinuity at  $w32ArgDcBusMsr$  approaching 0, and for efficiency reasons, the function will assign 0 to the output duty cycle ratios if the  $w32ArgDcBusMsr$  is below the threshold of  $2^{-15}$ . In other words, the 16 least significant bits of the `w32DcBusMsr` are ignored. Additionally, the computed output of the  $u_\alpha^*$  and  $u_\beta^*$  components may be inaccurate in the 16 least significant bits.

#### 4.6.6 Note

Both the inverse modulation index `pIn->w32ModIndex` and the measured DC bus voltage `pIn->w32DcBusMsr` must be equal to or greater than 0, otherwise the results are undefined.

#### 4.6.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

#### 4.6.8 Code Example

```
#include "gmclib.h"

#define U_MAX    (36.0)        // Voltage scale

MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T tr32InVoltage;
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T tr32OutVoltage;

GMCLIB_ELIM_DC_BUS_RIP_T trMyElimDCB = GMCLIB_ELIMDCBUSRIP_DEFAULT;

void main(void)
{
    // Input voltage vector 15V @ angle 30deg
    // alpha component of input voltage vector = 12.99[V]
    // beta component of input voltage vector = 7.5[V]
    tr32InVoltage.f32Alpha    = FRAC32(12.99/U_MAX);
    tr32InVoltage.f32Beta    = FRAC32(7.5/U_MAX);

    // inverse modulation coefficient for standard space vector modulation
    trMyElimDCB.f32ModIndex   = FRAC32(0.866025403784439);

    // value of "measured" DC bus voltage 17V
    // When used in final application this randomly chosen value shall be
    // replaced by actual value of measured voltage on DC bus terminals of
    // the power inverter
    trMyElimDCB.f32ArgDcBusMsr = FRAC32(17.0/U_MAX);

    // output should be
```



## GMCLIB\_ElimDcBusRip

```

// alpha component of the output voltage vector:
//   (12.99/36)*0.8660/(17.0/36/2) = 1.3235 -> 1.0 -> 0x7fffffff
// beta component of the output voltage vector :
//   (7.5/36)*0.8660/(17.0/36/2) = 0.7641 -> 0x61cf5770
// due to 16-bit accuracy the result will be 0x61cf8000

GMCLIB_ElimDcBusRip(&tr32OutVoltage, &tr32InVoltage, &trMyElimDCB);

return;
}

```

### 4.6.9 Performance

Table 4-10: GMCLIB\_ElimDcBusRip function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	264/264/248
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	164/146/92
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	39/40/21

## 4.7 GMCLIB\_DecouplingPMSM

### 4.7.1 Declaration

```
void GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSMANSIC(MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T *pUdqDec, const
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T *const pUdq, const MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T *const pIdq,
Frac32 f32AngularVel, const MCLIB_DECOUPLING_PMSM_PARAM_T *const pParam)
```

### 4.7.2 Alias

```
#define GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSM(pUdqDec, pUdq, pIdq, f32AngularVel, pParam) \
    GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSMANSIC(pUdqDec, pUdq, pIdq, f32AngularVel, pParam)
```

### 4.7.3 Arguments

Table 4-11: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T *	pUdqDec	out	Pointer to the structure containing direct ( $u_{dfdec}$ ) and quadrature ( $u_{qfdec}$ ) components of the decoupled stator voltage vector to be applied on the motor terminals
const MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T *const	pUdq	in	Pointer to the structure containing direct ( $u_{df}$ ) and quadrature ( $u_{qf}$ ) components of the stator voltage vector generated by the current controllers
const MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T *const	pIdq	in	Pointer to the structure containing direct ( $i_{df}$ ) and quadrature ( $i_{qf}$ ) components of the stator current vector measured on the motor terminals
Frac32	f32AngularVel		Rotor angular velocity in rad/sec, referred to as ( $\omega_{ef}$ ) in the detailed section of the documentation
const MCLIB_DECOUPLING_PMSM_PARAM_T *const	pParam	in	Pointer to the structure containing $k_{df}$ and $k_{qf}$ coefficients and scale parameters ( $k_{d\_shift}$ ) and ( $k_{q\_shift}$ )

### 4.7.4 Return

The function returns data type void.

### 4.7.5 Description

The `GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSMANCISIC` function, denoting ANSI-C compatible source code implementation, can be called via the function alias `GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSM`.

The quadrature phase model of a PMSM motor, in a synchronous reference frame, is popular for field-oriented control structures because both controllable quantities, current and voltage, are DC values. This allows for employing only simple controllers to force the machine currents into the defined states.

The voltage equations of this model can be obtained by transforming the motor three phase voltage equations into a quadrature phase rotational frame, which is aligned and rotates synchronously with the rotor. Such a transformation, after some mathematical corrections, yields the following set of equations, describing the quadrature phase model of a PMSM motor, in a synchronous reference frame:

$$\begin{bmatrix} u_d \\ u_q \end{bmatrix} = R_s \begin{bmatrix} i_d \\ i_q \end{bmatrix} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} L_d & 0 \\ 0 & L_q \end{bmatrix} \frac{d}{dt} \begin{bmatrix} i_d \\ i_q \end{bmatrix}}_{\text{linear}} + \underbrace{\omega_e \begin{bmatrix} -L_q \\ L_d \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} i_q \\ i_d \end{bmatrix}}_{\text{cross-coupling}} + \underbrace{\omega_e \psi_{pm} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}}_{\text{backEMF}} \quad (4.14)$$

It can be seen that (4.14) represents a non-linear cross dependent system. The linear voltage components cover the model of the phase winding, which is simplified to a resistance in series with inductance (R-L circuit). The cross-coupling components represent the mutual coupling between the two phases of the quadrature phase model, and the back-EMF component (visible only in q-axis voltage) represents the generated back EMF voltage caused by rotor rotation.

In order to achieve dynamic torque, speed, and positional control, the non-linear and back-EMF components from (4.14) must be compensated for. This will result in a fully decoupled flux and torque control of the machine and simplifies the PMSM motor model into two independent R-L circuit models as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} u_d &= R_s i_d + L_d \frac{di_d}{dt} \\ u_q &= R_s i_q + L_q \frac{di_q}{dt} \end{aligned} \quad (4.15)$$

Such a simplification of the PMSM model also greatly simplifies the design of both the d-q current controllers. Therefore, it is advantageous to compensate for the cross-coupling terms in (4.14), using the feed-forward voltages  $\bar{u}_{dq_{comp}}$  given from (4.14) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} u_{d_{comp}} &= -\omega_e \cdot L_q \cdot i_q \\ u_{q_{comp}} &= \omega_e \cdot L_d \cdot i_d \end{aligned} \quad (4.16)$$

The feed-forward voltages  $\bar{u}_{dq_{comp}}$  are added to the voltages generated by the current controllers  $\bar{u}_{dq}$ , which cover the R-L model. The resulting voltages represent the direct  $u_{d_{dec}}$  and quadrature  $u_{q_{dec}}$  components of the decoupled voltage vector that is to be applied on the motor terminals (using a pulse width modulator). The back EMF voltage component is already considered to be compensated by an external function.

The function `GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSM` calculates the cross-coupling voltages  $\bar{u}_{dq_{comp}}$  and adds these to the input  $\bar{u}_{dq}$  voltage vector. Because the back EMF voltage component is considered compensated, this component is equal to zero. Therefore, calculations performed by `GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSM` are derived from these two equations:

$$\begin{aligned} u_{d_{dec}} &= u_d + u_{d_{comp}} \\ u_{q_{dec}} &= u_q + u_{q_{comp}} \end{aligned} \quad (4.17)$$

where  $\bar{u}_{dq}$  is the voltage vector calculated by the controllers (with the already-compensated back EMF component),  $\bar{u}_{dq_{comp}}$  is the feed-forward compensating voltage vector described in (4.16), and  $\bar{u}_{dq_{dec}}$  is the resulting decoupled voltage vector to be applied on the motor terminals. Substituting (4.16) into (4.17), and normalizing (4.17), results in the following set of equations:

$$\begin{aligned} u_{df_{dec}} \cdot U_{max} &= u_{df} \cdot U_{max} - \omega_{ef} \cdot \Omega_{max} \cdot L_q \cdot i_{qf} \cdot I_{max} \\ u_{qf_{dec}} \cdot U_{max} &= u_{qf} \cdot U_{max} + \omega_{ef} \cdot \Omega_{max} \cdot L_d \cdot i_{df} \cdot I_{max} \end{aligned} \quad (4.18)$$

where subscript  $f$  denotes the fractional representation of the respective quantity, and  $U_{max}$ ,  $I_{max}$ ,  $\Omega_{max}$  are the maximal values (scale values) for the voltage, current, and angular velocity respectively. Real quantities are converted to the fractional range  $[-1, 1)$  using the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned} u_{df_{dec}} &= \frac{u_{d_{dec}}}{U_{max}} & u_{qf_{dec}} &= \frac{u_{q_{dec}}}{U_{max}} \\ u_{df} &= \frac{u_d}{U_{max}} & u_{qf} &= \frac{u_q}{U_{max}} \\ i_{df} &= \frac{i_d}{I_{max}} & i_{qf} &= \frac{i_q}{I_{max}} \\ \omega_{ef} &= \frac{\omega_e}{\Omega_{max}} \end{aligned} \quad (4.19)$$

Rearranging (4.18) results in:

$$\begin{aligned} u_{df_{dec}} &= u_{df} - \omega_{ef} \cdot i_{qf} \frac{L_q \cdot \Omega_{max} \cdot I_{max}}{U_{max}} = u_{df} - \omega_{ef} \cdot i_{qf} \cdot k_d \\ u_{qf_{dec}} &= u_{qf} + \omega_{ef} \cdot i_{df} \frac{L_d \cdot \Omega_{max} \cdot I_{max}}{U_{max}} = u_{qf} + \omega_{ef} \cdot i_{df} \cdot k_q \end{aligned} \quad (4.20)$$

where  $k_d$  and  $k_q$  are coefficients calculated as:

$$\begin{aligned} k_d &= L_q \cdot \Omega_{max} \cdot \frac{I_{max}}{U_{max}} \\ k_q &= L_d \cdot \Omega_{max} \cdot \frac{I_{max}}{U_{max}} \end{aligned} \quad (4.21)$$

Because function **GMCLIB\_DecouplingPMSM** is implemented using the fractional arithmetics, both the  $k_d$  and  $k_q$  coefficients also have to be scaled to fit into the fractional range  $[-1, 1)$ . For that purpose, two additional scaling coefficients are defined as:

$$\begin{aligned} k_{d\_shift} &= \text{ceil} \left( \frac{\log(k_d)}{\log(2)} \right) \\ k_{q\_shift} &= \text{ceil} \left( \frac{\log(k_q)}{\log(2)} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (4.22)$$

Using scaling coefficients (4.22), the fractional representation of coefficients  $k_d$  and  $k_q$  from (4.21) are derived as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} k_{df} &= k_d \cdot 2^{-k_{d\_shift}} \\ k_{qf} &= k_q \cdot 2^{-k_{q\_shift}} \end{aligned} \quad (4.23)$$

Substituting (4.21) - (4.23) into (4.20) results in the final form of the equation set, which is implemented in the **GMCLIB\_DecouplingPMSM** function:

$$\begin{aligned} u_{df_{dec}} &= u_{df} - \omega_{ef} \cdot i_{qf} \cdot k_{df} \cdot 2^{k_{d\_shift}} \\ u_{qf_{dec}} &= u_{qf} + \omega_{ef} \cdot i_{df} \cdot k_{qf} \cdot 2^{k_{q\_shift}} \end{aligned} \quad (4.24)$$

Scaling of both equations into the fractional range is done using a multiplication by  $2^{k_{d\_shift}}$ ,  $2^{k_{q\_shift}}$ , respectively. Therefore, it is implemented as a simple left shift with overflow protection.

## GMCLIB\_DecouplingPMSM

### 4.7.6 Note

All parameters can be reset during declaration using the `GMCLIB_DECOUPLINGPMSM_DEFAULT` macro.

### 4.7.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 4.7.8 Code Example

```
#include "gmclib.h"
#define L_D      (50.0e-3) // Ld inductance = 50mH
#define L_Q      (100.0e-3) // Lq inductance = 100mH
#define U_MAX    (50.0) // scale for voltage = 50V
#define I_MAX    (10.0) // scale for current = 10A
#define W_MAX    (2000.0) // scale for angular velocity = 2000rad/sec

// Example of calculation of function scale coefficients (remove backslashes
// and copy paste into Matlab)
// L_D      = 50e-3;
// L_Q      = 100e-3;
// U_MAX    = 50;
// I_MAX    = 10;
// W_MAX    = 2000;
// k_d      = (L_Q*W_MAX*I_MAX/U_MAX)
// k_d_shift = ceil(log(k_d)/log(2)) = 6
// k_df     = k_d * 2^(-k_d_shift) = 0.625
// k_q      = (L_D*W_MAX*I_MAX/U_MAX)
// k_q_shift = ceil(log(k_q)/log(2)) = 5
// k_qf     = k_q * 2^(-k_q_shift) = 0.625

MCLIB_DECOUPLING_PMSM_PARAM_T trMyDec = GMCLIB_DECOUPLINGPMSM_DEFAULT;
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T trUsDQ;
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T trIsDQ;
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T trUsDecDQ;
Frac32 f32We;

void main(void)
{
    // scaling coefficients of given decoupling algorithm
    trMyDec.f32Kd = FRAC32(0.625);
    trMyDec.w16KdShift = 6;
    trMyDec.f32Kq = FRAC32(0.625);
    trMyDec.w16KqShift = 5;
    trUsDQ.f32D = FRAC32(5.0/U_MAX); // d quantity of input voltage vector 5[V]
    trUsDQ.f32Q = FRAC32(10.0/U_MAX); // q quantity of input voltage vector 10[V]
    trIsDQ.f32D = FRAC32(6.0/I_MAX); // d quantity of measured current vector 6[A]
    trIsDQ.f32Q = FRAC32(4.0/I_MAX); // q quantity of measured current vector 4[A]
    f32We = FRAC32(100.0/W_MAX) // rotor angular velocity

    // Output should be
    // trUsDecDQ.f32D = 0xA666668C ~= -35[V]
    // trUsDecDQ.f32Q = 0x66666659 ~= 40[V]
    GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSM(&trUsDecDQ, &trUsDq, &trIsDq, f32We, &trMyDec);
}
```

### 4.7.9 Performance

Table 4-12: GMCLIB\_DecouplingPMSM function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	224/224/200
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	98/84/543
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	98/84/54

## 4.8 GMCLIB\_SvmStd

### 4.8.1 Declaration

```
UWord32 GMCLIB_SvmStdANSIC(MCLIB_3_COOR_SYST_T *pOut, const
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T *const pIn)
```

### 4.8.2 Alias

```
#define GMCLIB_SvmStd(pOutput, pInput) \
    GMCLIB_SvmStdANSIC(pOutput, pInput)
```

### 4.8.3 Arguments

Table 4-13: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
const <a href="#">MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T</a> *const	pIn	in	Pointer to the structure containing direct $U_\alpha$ and quadrature $U_\beta$ components of the stator voltage vector
<a href="#">MCLIB_3_COOR_SYST_T</a> *	pOut	out	Pointer to the structure containing calculated duty-cycle ratios of the the 3-Phase system

### 4.8.4 Return

The function returns a 32-bit value in format INT, representing the actual space sector which contains the stator reference vector  $U_s$ .

### 4.8.5 Description

The [GMCLIB\\_SvmStdANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible implementation, can be called via the function alias [GMCLIB\\_SvmStd](#).

The SVMstd function for calculating duty-cycle ratios is widely-used in the modern electric drive. This function calculates appropriate duty-cycle ratios, which are needed for generating the given stator reference voltage vector using a special Space Vector Modulation technique, termed Standard Space Vector Modulation. The basic principle of the Standard Space Vector Modulation technique can be explained with the help of the power stage diagram in Figure 4-1. Top and bottom switches work in a complementary mode; in other words, if the top switch,  $S_{At}$ , is ON, then the corresponding bottom switch,  $S_{Ab}$ , is OFF, and vice versa. Considering that value 1 is assigned to the ON state of the top switch, and value 0 is assigned to the ON state of the bottom switch, the switching vector,  $[a, b, c]^T$  can be defined. Creating such a vector allows for a numerical definition of all possible switching states. In a three-phase power stage configuration (as shown in Figure 4-1), eight possible switching states (Figure 4-2) are feasible.

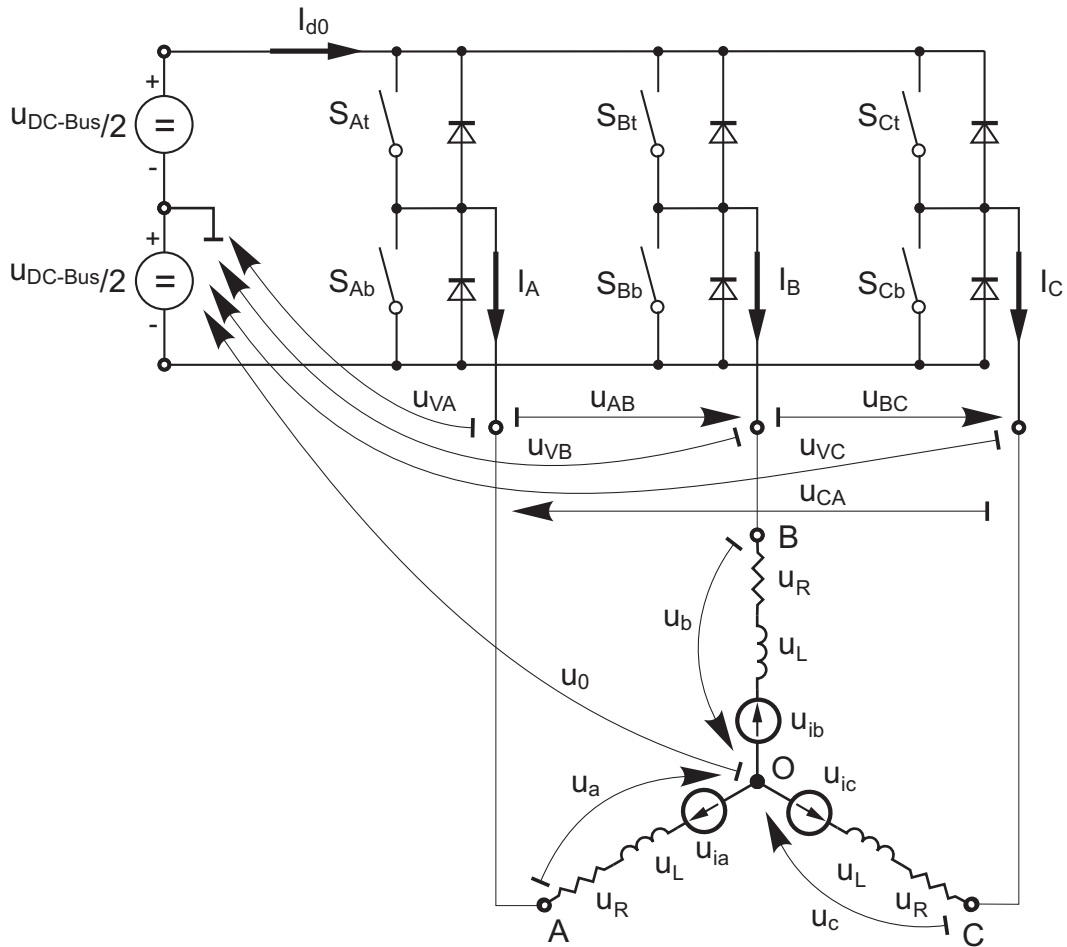


Figure 4-1: Power stage schematic diagram

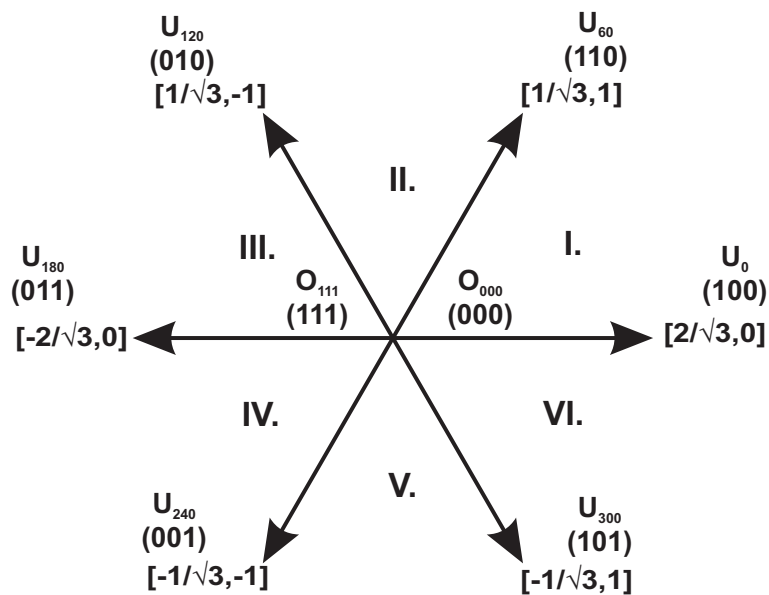


Figure 4-2: Basic space vectors



These states, together with the resulting instantaneous output line-to-line and phase voltages, are listed in Table 4-14.

Table 4-14: Switching patterns

<i>a</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>c</i>	$U_a$	$U_b$	$U_c$	$U_{AB}$	$U_{BC}$	$U_{CA}$	Vector
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	$O_{000}$
1	0	0	$\frac{2}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$-\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$-\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$U_{DCBus}$	0	$-U_{DCBus}$	$U_0$
1	1	0	$\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$-\frac{2}{3}U_{DCBus}$	0	$U_{DCBus}$	$-U_{DCBus}$	$U_{60}$
0	1	0	$-\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$\frac{2}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$-\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$-U_{DCBus}$	$U_{DCBus}$	0	$U_{120}$
0	1	1	$-\frac{2}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$-U_{DCBus}$	0	$U_{DCBus}$	$U_{240}$
0	0	1	$-\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$-\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$\frac{2}{3}U_{DCBus}$	0	$-U_{DCBus}$	$U_{DCBus}$	$U_{300}$
1	0	1	$\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$-\frac{2}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$U_{DCBus}$	$-U_{DCBus}$	0	$U_{360}$
1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	$O_{111}$

The quantities of the direct-  $U_\alpha$  and the quadrature-  $U_\beta$  components of the two-phase orthogonal coordinate system, describing the three-phase stator voltages, are expressed by the Clarke Transformation.

$$U_\alpha = \frac{2}{3} \left( U_a - \frac{U_b}{2} - \frac{U_c}{2} \right) \quad (4.25)$$

$$U_\beta = \frac{2}{3} \left( 0 + \frac{\sqrt{3}U_b}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{3}U_c}{2} \right) \quad (4.26)$$

The three-phase stator voltages,  $U_a$ ,  $U_b$ , and  $U_c$ , are transformed using the Clarke Transformation into the  $U_\alpha$  and the  $U_\beta$  components of the two-phase orthogonal coordinate system. The transformation results are listed in Table 4-15.

Figure 4-2 graphically depicts some feasible basic switching states (vectors). It is clear that there are six non-zero vectors  $U_0, U_{60}, U_{120}, U_{180}, U_{240}, U_{300}$ , and two zero vectors  $O_{111}, O_{000}$ , usable for switching. Therefore, the principle of the Standard Space Vector Modulation resides in applying appropriate switching states for a certain time and thus generating a voltage vector identical to the reference one.

Referring to that principle, an objective of the Standard Space Vector Modulation is an approximation of the reference stator voltage vector  $U_S$  with an appropriate combination of the switching patterns composed of basic space vectors. The graphical explanation of this objective is shown in Figures 4-3 and 4-4.

The stator reference voltage vector  $U_S$  is phase-advanced by  $30^\circ$  from the axis-  $\alpha$  and thus might be generated with an appropriate combination of the adjacent basic switching states  $U_0$  and  $U_{60}$ . These figures also indicate the resultant  $U_\alpha$  and  $U_\beta$  components for space vectors  $U_0$  and  $U_{60}$ . In this case, the reference stator voltage vector  $U_S$  is located in Sector I and, as previously mentioned, can be generated with the appropriate duty-cycle ratios of the basic switching states  $U_{60}$  and  $U_0$ . The principal equations concerning this vector location are:

$$T = T_{60} + T_0 + T_{null} \quad (4.27)$$

Table 4-15: Switching patterns and space vectors

$a$	$b$	$c$	$U_\alpha$	$U_\beta$	Vector
0	0	0	0	0	$O_{000}$
1	0	0	$\frac{2}{3}U_{DCBus}$	0	$U_0$
1	1	0	$\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}U_{DCBus}$	$U_{60}$
0	1	0	$-\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}U_{DCBus}$	$U_{120}$
0	1	1	$-\frac{2}{3}U_{DCBus}$	0	$U_{240}$
0	0	1	$-\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}U_{DCBus}$	$U_{300}$
1	0	1	$\frac{1}{3}U_{DCBus}$	$-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}U_{DCBus}$	$U_{360}$
1	1	1	0	0	$O_{111}$

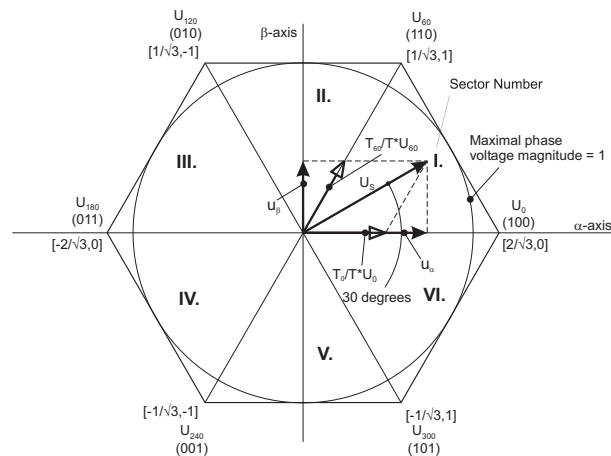


Figure 4-3: Projection of reference voltage vector in Sector I

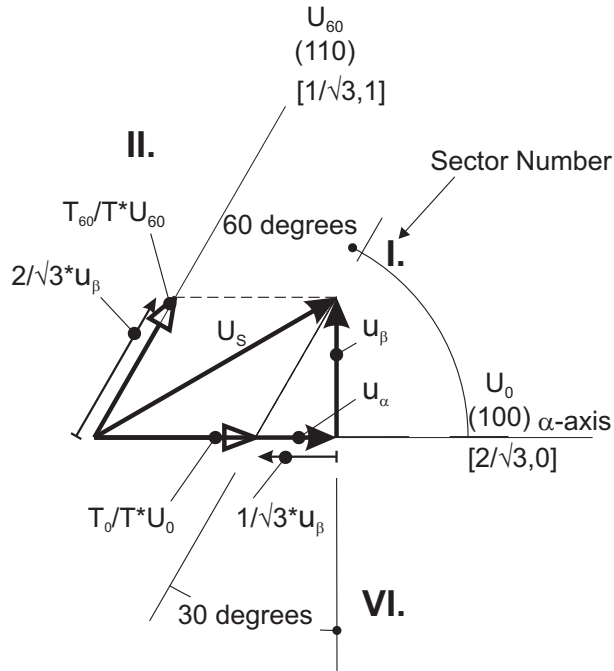


Figure 4-4: Detail of the voltage vector projection in Sector I

$$U_s = \frac{T_{60}}{T} \cdot U_{60} + \frac{T_0}{T} \cdot U_0 \quad (4.28)$$

where  $T_{60}$  and  $T_0$  are the respective duty-cycle ratios for which the basic space vectors  $U_{60}$  and  $U_0$  should be applied within the time period  $T$ .  $T_{null}$  is the course of time for which the null vectors  $O_{000}$  and  $O_{111}$  are applied. Those duty-cycle ratios can be calculated using equations:

$$u_\beta = \frac{T_{60}}{T} \cdot |U_{60}| \cdot \sin 60^\circ \quad (4.29)$$

$$u_\alpha = \frac{T_0}{T} \cdot |U_0| + \frac{u_\beta}{\tan 60^\circ} \quad (4.30)$$

Considering that the normalized magnitudes of the basic space vectors are  $|U_{60}| = |U_0| = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$  and by substitution of the trigonometric expressions  $\sin 60^\circ$  and  $\tan 60^\circ$  by their quantities  $\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$  and  $\sqrt{3}$ , respectively, equations (4.29) and (4.30) can be rearranged for the unknown duty-cycle ratios  $\frac{T_{60}}{T}$  and  $\frac{T_0}{T}$ :

$$\frac{T_{60}}{T} = u_\beta \quad (4.31)$$

$$U_s = \frac{T_{120}}{T} \cdot U_{120} + \frac{T_{60}}{T} \cdot U_{60} \quad (4.32)$$

Sector II is depicted in Figure 4-5. In this particular case, the reference stator voltage vector  $U_s$  is generated by the appropriate duty-cycle ratios of the basic switching states  $U_{60}$  and  $U_{120}$ . The basic equations describing this sector are:

$$T = T_{120} + T_{60} + T_{null} \quad (4.33)$$

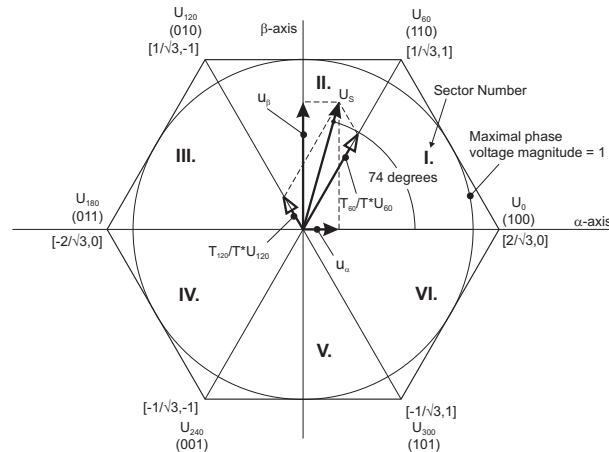


Figure 4-5: Projection of the Reference Voltage Vector in Sector II

$$U_s = \frac{T_{120}}{T} * U_{120} + \frac{T_{60}}{T} * U_{60} \quad (4.34)$$

where  $T_{120}$  and  $T_{60}$  are the respective duty-cycle ratios for which the basic space vectors  $U_{120}$  and  $U_{60}$  should be applied within the time period  $T$ . These resultant duty-cycle ratios are formed from the auxiliary components termed  $A$  and  $B$ . The graphical representation of the auxiliary components is shown in Figure 4-6.

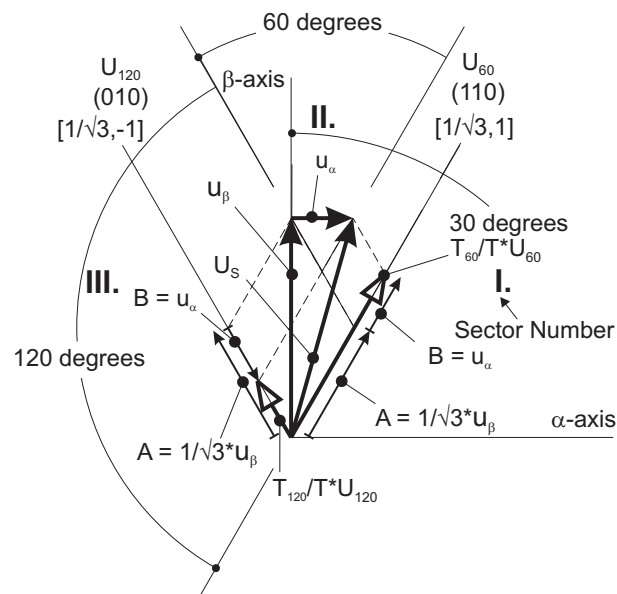


Figure 4-6: Detail of the voltage vector Projection in Sector II

The equations describing those auxiliary time-duration components are:

$$\frac{\sin 30^\circ}{\sin 120^\circ} = \frac{A}{u_\beta} \quad (4.35)$$

$$\frac{\sin 60^\circ}{\sin 60^\circ} = \frac{B}{u_\alpha} \quad (4.36)$$

## GMCLIB\_SvmStd

Equations (4.34) and (4.35) have been formed using the sine rule. These equations can be rearranged for the calculation of the auxiliary time-duration components A and B. This is done simply by substitution of the trigonometric terms  $\sin 30^\circ$ ,  $\sin 120^\circ$  and  $\sin 60^\circ$  by their numerical representations  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$  and  $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ , respectively.

$$A = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \cdot u_\beta \quad (4.37)$$

$$B = u_\alpha \quad (4.38)$$

The resultant duty-cycle ratios,  $\frac{T_{120}}{T}$  and  $\frac{T_{60}}{T}$ , are then expressed in terms of the auxiliary time-duration components defined by Equations (4.38) and (4.39), as follows:

$$\frac{T_{120}}{T} \cdot |U_{120}| = A - B \quad (4.39)$$

$$\frac{T_{60}}{T} \cdot |U_{60}| = A + B \quad (4.40)$$

With the help of these equations, and also considering the normalized magnitudes of the basic space vectors to be  $|U_{120}| = |U_{60}| = \frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}$ , the equations expressed for the unknown duty-cycle ratios of basic space vectors  $\frac{T_{120}}{T}$  and  $\frac{T_{60}}{T}$  can be written:

$$\frac{T_{120}}{T} = \frac{1}{2} (u_\beta - \sqrt{3} \cdot u_\alpha) \quad (4.41)$$

$$\frac{T_{60}}{T} = \frac{1}{2} (u_\beta + \sqrt{3} \cdot u_\alpha) \quad (4.42)$$

The duty-cycle ratios in remaining sectors can be derived using the same approach. The resulting equations will be similar to those derived for Sector I and Sector II. To depict duty-cycle ratios of the basic space vectors for all sectors, we define three auxiliary variables:

$$X = u_\beta \quad (4.43)$$

$$Y = \frac{1}{2} \cdot (u_\beta + \sqrt{3} \cdot u_\alpha) \quad (4.44)$$

$$Z = \frac{1}{2} \cdot (u_\beta - \sqrt{3} \cdot u_\alpha) \quad (4.45)$$

Two expressions  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  generally represent duty-cycle ratios of the basic space vectors in the respective sector; for example for the first sector,  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  represent duty-cycle ratios of the basic space vectors  $U_{60}$  and  $U_0$ ; for the second sector,  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  represent duty-cycle ratios of the basic space vectors  $U_{120}$  and  $U_{60}$ , and so on. For each sector, the expressions  $t_1$  and  $t_2$ , in terms of auxiliary variables X, Y, and Z, are listed in Table 4-16.

The sector number is required for the determination of auxiliary variables X equation (4.43), Y equation (4.44) and Z equation (4.45), This information can be obtained by several approaches. One approach discussed here requires the use of a modified Inverse Clark Transformation to transform the direct-  $\alpha$  and quadrature-  $\beta$  components into a balanced three-phase quantity  $u_{ref1}$ ,  $u_{ref2}$ , and  $u_{ref3}$ , used for a straightforward calculation of the sector number, to be shown later.

Table 4-16: Determination of  $t_1$  and  $t_2$  expressions

Sector	$U_0, U_{60}$	$U_{60}, U_{120}$	$U_{120}, U_{180}$	$U_{180}, U_{240}$	$U_{240}, U_{300}$	$U_{300}, U_0$
$t_1$	X	Y	-Y	Z	-Z	-X
$t_2$	-Z	Z	X	-X	-Y	Y

$$u_{ref1} = u_\beta \quad (4.46)$$

$$u_{ref2} = \frac{1}{2} \cdot (-u_\beta + \sqrt{3} \cdot u_\alpha) \quad (4.47)$$

$$u_{ref3} = \frac{1}{2} \cdot (-u_\beta - \sqrt{3} \cdot u_\alpha) \quad (4.48)$$

The modified Inverse Clark Transformation projects the quadrature-  $u_\beta$  component into  $u_{ref1}$ , as shown in Figures 4-7 and 4-8, whereas voltages generated by the conventional Inverse Clark Transformation project the  $u_\alpha$  component into  $u_{ref1}$ .

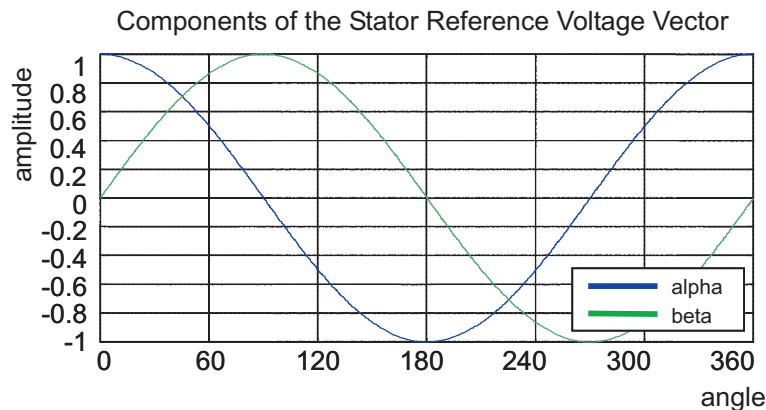

 Figure 4-7: Direct- $u_\alpha$  and Quadrature- $u_\beta$  components of stator reference voltage

Figure 4-7 depicts the  $u_\alpha$  and  $u_\beta$  components of the stator reference voltage vector  $U_S$  that were calculated by the equations  $u_\alpha = \cos \vartheta$  and  $u_\beta = \sin \vartheta$ , respectively.

The Sector Identification Tree, shown in Figure 4-9, can be a numerical solution of the approach shown in Figure 4-8.

It should be pointed out that, in the worst case, three simple comparisons are required to precisely identify the sector of the stator reference voltage vector. For example, if the stator reference voltage vector resides according to the one shown in Figure 4-3, the stator reference voltage vector is phase-advanced by  $30^\circ$  from the  $\alpha$ -axis, which results in the positive quantities of  $u_{ref1}$  and  $u_{ref2}$  and the negative quantity of  $u_{ref3}$ ; see to Figure 4-8. If these quantities are used as the inputs to the Sector Identification Tree, the product of those comparisons will be Sector I. The same approach identifies Sector II if the stator reference voltage vector is located according to the one shown in Figure 4-6. The variables  $t_1$ ,  $t_2$  and  $t_3$ , representing the switching duty-cycle ratios of the respective three-phase system, are given by the following equations:

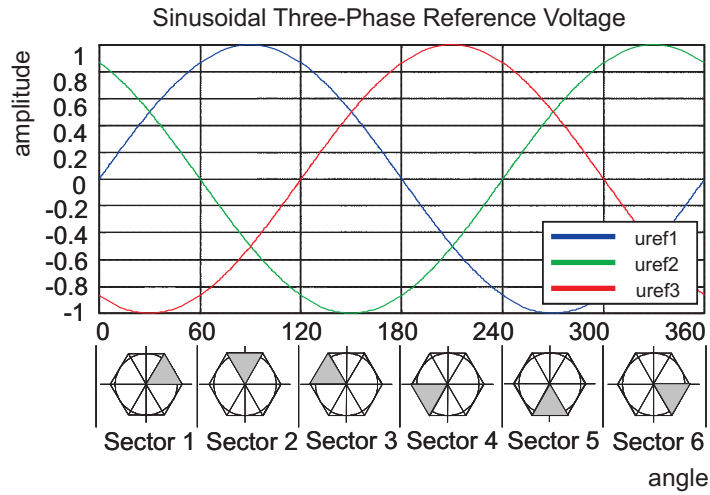


Figure 4-8: Reference voltages  $u_{ref1}$ ,  $u_{ref2}$  and  $u_{ref3}$

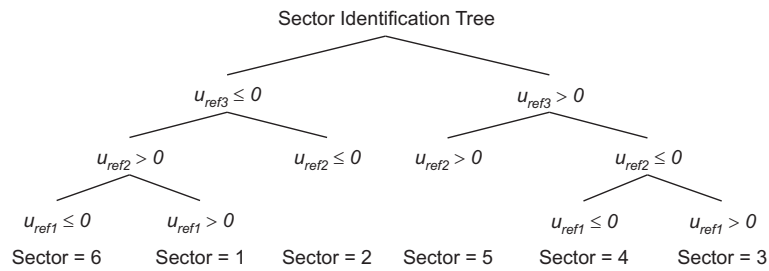


Figure 4-9: Identification of the sector number

$$t_1 = \frac{T - t_{_1} - t_{_2}}{2} \quad (4.49)$$

$$t_2 = t_1 + t_{_1} \quad (4.50)$$

$$t_3 = t_2 + t_{_2} \quad (4.51)$$

where  $T$  is the switching period,  $t_{_1}$  and  $t_{_2}$  are the duty-cycle ratios of the basic space vectors. The vectors are given for the respective sector Equation (4.45), Equation (4.46) and Equation (4.47) are specific solely to the Standard Space Vector Modulation technique; consequently, other Space Vector Modulation techniques discussed later will require deriving different equations. The next step is to assign the correct duty-cycle ratios,  $t_1$ ,  $t_2$  and  $t_3$ , to the respective motor phases. This is a simple task, accomplished in view of the position of the stator reference voltage vector as shown in Table 4-17.

Table 4-17: Assignment of the duty-cycle ratios to motor phases

Sector	$U_0, U_{60}$	$U_{60}, U_{120}$	$U_{120}, U_{180}$	$U_{180}, U_{240}$	$U_{240}, U_{300}$	$U_{300}, U_0$
pwm_a	$t_3$	$t_2$	$t_1$	$t_1$	$t_2$	$t_3$
pwm_b	$t_2$	$t_3$	$t_3$	$t_2$	$t_1$	$t_1$
pwm_c	$t_1$	$t_1$	$t_2$	$t_3$	$t_3$	$t_2$

The principle of the Space Vector Modulation technique consists in applying the basic voltage vectors  $U_{XXX}$  and  $O_{XXX}$  for the certain time in such a way that the mean vector, generated by the Pulse Width Modulation approach for the period  $T$ , is equal to the original stator reference voltage vector  $U_S$ . This provides a great variability of the arrangement of the basic vectors during the PWM period  $T$ . Those vectors might be arranged either to lower switching losses or to achieve diverse results, such as center-aligned PWM, edge-aligned PWM or a minimal number of switching states. A brief discussion of the widely-used center-aligned PWM follows. The center-aligned PWM pattern is generated by comparing the threshold levels, pwm\_a, pwm\_b, and pwm\_c with a free-running up-down counter. The timer counts to 1 (0x7FFF) and then down to 0 (0x0000). It is supposed that when a threshold level is larger than the timer value, the respective PWM output is active. Otherwise, it is inactive; see Figure 4-10.

#### 4.8.6 Note

There are several types of Space Vector Modulation Modulations which differ mainly by order of the vectors. This one is the most common.

#### 4.8.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.



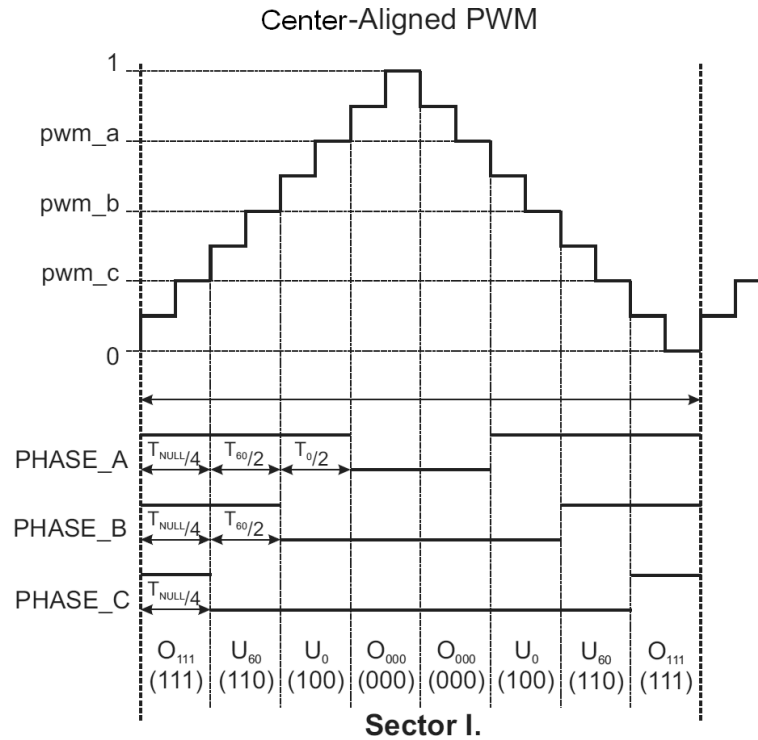


Figure 4-10: Standard Space Vector Modulation technique - center-aligned PWM

### 4.8.8 Code Example

```
#include "gmclib.h"
#define U_MAX 15

MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_ALPHA_BETA_T tr32InVoltage;
MCLIB_3_COOR_SYST_T tr32PwmABC;
UWord32 u32SvmSector;

void main(void)
{
    // Input voltage vector 15V @ angle 30deg
    // alpha component of input voltage vector = 12.99[V]
    // beta component of input voltage vector = 7.5[V]
    tr32InVoltage.f32Alpha = FRAC32(12.99/U_MAX);
    tr32InVoltage.f32Beta = FRAC32(7.5/U_MAX);

    // output pwm dutycycles stored in structure referenced by tr32PwmABC
    // pwmA dutycycle = 0x7FFF A2C9 = FRAC32(0.9999888... )
    // pwmB dutycycle = 0x4000 5D35 = FRAC32(0.5000111... )
    // pwmC dutycycle = 0x0000 5D35 = FRAC32(0.0000111... )
    // svmSector = 0x1 [sector]
    u32SvmSector = GMCLIB_SvmStd(&tr32PwmABC,&tr32InVoltage);
}
```

### 4.8.9 Performance

Table 4-18: **GMCLIB\_SvmStd** function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	310/310/326
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	81/68/52
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	72/63/44

## 4.9 GMCLIB\_VectorLimit

### 4.9.1 Declaration

```
bool GMCLIB_VectorLimitANSIC(MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T *const pOut, const
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T *const pIn, const GMCLIB_VectorLimit_T *const pParam)
```

### 4.9.2 Alias

```
#define GMCLIB_VectorLimit(w32Out, w32In, pParam) \
    GMCLIB_VectorLimitANSIC((w32Out), (w32In), (pParam))
```

### 4.9.3 Arguments

Table 4-19: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
<a href="#">MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T</a> *const	pOut	out	Pointer to the structure of the limited output vector.
const <a href="#">MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T</a> *const	pIn	in	Pointer to the structure of the input vector.
const <a href="#">GMCLIB_VectorLimit_T</a> *const	pParam	in	Pointer to the parameters structure.

### 4.9.4 Return

The function will return true ( `TRUE` ) if the input vector is being limited, or false ( `FALSE` ) otherwise.

### 4.9.5 Description

The [GMCLIB\\_VectorLimit](#) function limits the magnitude of the input vector, keeping its direction unchanged. Limitation is performed as follows:

## GMCLIB\_VectorLimit

$$y_{out} = \begin{cases} \frac{y_{in}}{\sqrt{x_{in}^2 + y_{in}^2}} \cdot L & \text{if } \sqrt{x_{in}^2 + y_{in}^2} > L \\ y_{in} & \text{if } \sqrt{x_{in}^2 + y_{in}^2} \leq L \end{cases} \quad (4.52)$$

$$x_{out} = \begin{cases} \frac{x_{in}}{\sqrt{x_{in}^2 + y_{in}^2}} \cdot L & \text{if } \sqrt{x_{in}^2 + y_{in}^2} > L \\ x_{in} & \text{if } \sqrt{x_{in}^2 + y_{in}^2} \leq L \end{cases} \quad (4.53)$$

Where:

- $x_{in}$ ,  $y_{in}$ , and  $x_{out}$ ,  $y_{out}$  are the coordinates of the input and output vector, respectively
- $L$  is the maximum magnitude of the vector

The input vector coordinates are defined by the structure pointed to by the `pIn` parameter, and the output vector coordinates be found in the structure pointed by the `pOut` parameter. The maximum vector magnitude is defined in the parameters structure pointed to by the `pParam` function parameter. A graphical interpretation of the function can be seen in the Figure 4-11

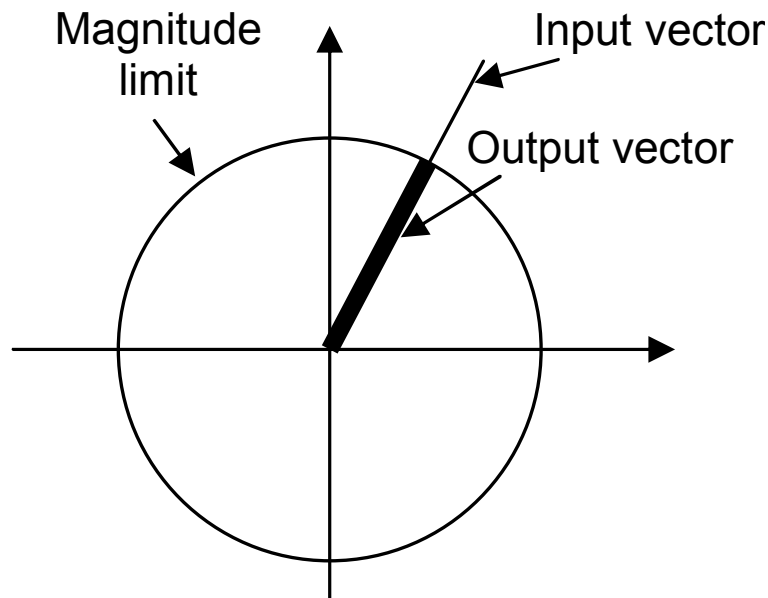


Figure 4-11: Graphical interpretation of the GMCLIB\_VectorLimit function

If an actual limitation occurs, the function will return the logical true ( `TRUE`), otherwise the logical false will be returned ( `FALSE`). For computational reasons, the output vector will be computed as zero if the input vector magnitude is lower than  $2^{-15}$ , regardless of the set maximum magnitude of the input vector. The function returns the logical true ( `TRUE`) in this case. Also, the 16 least significant bits of the maximum vector magnitude in the parameters structure, the `pParam->w32Lim`, are ignored. This means that the defined magnitude must be equal to or greater than  $2^{-15}$ , otherwise the result is undefined.

#### 4.9.6 Caution

The maximum vector magnitude in the parameters structure, the `pParam->w32Lim`, must be positive and equal to or greater than  $2^{-15}$ , otherwise the result is undefined. The function does not check for the valid range of `pParam->w32Lim`.

#### 4.9.7 Note

The function calls the square root routine ( `GFLIB_Sqrt` ).

#### 4.9.8 Reentrancy:

The function is reentrant.

#### 4.9.9 Code Example:

```
#include "gmclib.h"

GMCLIB_VectorLimit_T VectorLimitParam;
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T In = { 0, 0};
MCLIB_2_COOR_SYST_D_Q_T Out = { 0, 0};
bool bLim;

void main(void)
{
    VectorLimitParam.f32Lim = 0x20000000; // 2^-2
    In.f32D = 0x20000000; // 2^-2
    In.f32Q = 0x20000000; // 2^-2
    bLim = GMCLIB_VectorLimit(&Out, &In, &VectorLimitParam);
    // Calculations:
    // Len = sqrt(2)*2^-2
    // Len > 2^-2, limitation required
    // xout = 2^-2/Len * Lim = sqrt(2)/2 * 2^-2
    // yout = 2^-2/Len * Lim = sqrt(2)/2 * 2^-2
    // sqrt(2)/2*2^-2 = 0x16A09E66
    // The output should be:
    // Out.f32D = 0x16a08000
    // Out.f32Q = 0x16a08000
    // bLim = TRUE

    return;
}
```

#### 4.9.10 Performance

Table 4-20: GMCLIB\_VectorLimit function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	276/276/228
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	269/243/158
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	54/62/26

# CHAPTER 5: GDFLIB

---

## 5.1 Function API Overview

- void `GDFLIB_FilterIIR1Init` ( `GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR1_T` \* pParam)  
*This function clears internal filter buffers used in function `GDFLIB_FilterIIR1`*
- `Frac32` `GDFLIB_FilterIIR1` ( `Frac32` f32In, `GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR1_T` \* pParam)  
*This function implements a Direct Form I first order IIR filter*
- void `GDFLIB_FilterIIR2Init` ( `GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR2_T` \* pParam)  
*This function clears internal filter buffers used in function `GDFLIB_FilterIIR2`*
- `Frac32` `GDFLIB_FilterIIR2` ( `Frac32` f32In, `GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR2_T` \* pParam)  
*This function implements a Direct Form I second order IIR filter*
- void `GDFLIB_FilterFIRInit` (const `GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_PARAM_T` \*const pParam, `GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_STATE_T` \*const pState, `Frac32` \* pf32InBuf)  
*This function performs initialization for the `GDFLIB_FilterFIR` function*
- `Frac32` `GDFLIB_FilterFIR` ( `Frac32` f32In, const `GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_PARAM_T` \*const pParam, `GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_STATE_T` \*const pState)  
*This function performs a single iteration of an FIR filter*
- void `GDFLIB_FilterMAInit` ( `GDFLIB_FILTER_MA_T` \* pParam)  
*This function clears the internal filter accumulator*
- `Frac32` `GDFLIB_FilterMA` ( `Frac32` f32In, `GDFLIB_FILTER_MA_T` \* pParam)  
*This function implements a moving average recursive filter*

## 5.2 GDFLIB\_FilterIIR1Init

### 5.2.1 Declaration

```
void GDFLIB_FilterIIR1InitANSIC(GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR1_T *pParam)
```

### 5.2.2 Alias

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterIIR1Init(pParam) \
    GDFLIB_FilterIIR1InitANSIC(pParam)
```

### 5.2.3 Arguments

Table 5-1: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
<a href="#">GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR1_T</a> *	pParam	in/out	Pointer to filter structure with filter buffer and filter parameters

### 5.2.4 Return

The function returns data type void.

### 5.2.5 Description

This function clears the internal buffers of a first order IIR filter. It shall be called after filter parameter initialization and whenever the filter initialization is required.

### 5.2.6 Note

This function shall not be called together with [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR1](#) unless periodic clearing of filter buffers is required.

### 5.2.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 5.2.8 Code Example

```
#include "gdfplib.h"

Frac32 f32Input;
Frac32 f32Output;

GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR1_T trMyIIR1 = GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR1_DEFAULT;
```

```

void main(void)
{
    // input value = 0.25
    f32Input = FRAC32(0.25);

    // filter coefficients (LPF 100Hz, Ts=100e-6)
    trMyIIR1.trFiltCoeff.f32B0 = FRAC32(0.030468747091254/8);
    trMyIIR1.trFiltCoeff.f32B1 = FRAC32(0.030468747091254/8);
    trMyIIR1.trFiltCoeff.f32A1 = FRAC32(-0.939062505817492/8);
    GDFLIB_FilterIIR1Init(&trMyIIR1);
}

```

## 5.2.9 Performance

Table 5-2: [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR1](#) function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	80/80/88
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	63/41/23
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	63/38/23



## 5.3 GDFLIB\_FilterIIR1

### 5.3.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GDFLIB_FilterIIR1ANSIC(Frac32 f32In, GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR1_T *pParam)
```

### 5.3.2 Alias

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterIIR1(f32In, pParam) \
    GDFLIB_FilterIIR1ANSIC(f32In, pParam)
```

### 5.3.3 Arguments

Table 5-3: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
<a href="#">GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR1_T</a> *	pParam	in/out	Pointer to the filter structure with a filter buffer and filter parameters
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32In	in	Value of input signal to be filtered in step (k). The value is a 32-bit number in the 1.31 fractional format

### 5.3.4 Return

The function returns a 32-bit value in fractional format 1.31, representing the filtered value of the input signal in step (k).

### 5.3.5 Description

The [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR1ANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible implementation, can be called via the function alias [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR1](#).

This function calculates the first order infinite impulse (IIR) filter. The IIR filters are also called recursive filters because both the input and the previously calculated output values are used for calculation of the filter equation in each step. This form of feedback enables transfer of the energy from the output to the input, which theoretically leads to an infinitely long impulse response (IIR). A general form of the IIR filter expressed as a transfer function in the Z-domain is described as follows:

$$H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{b_0 + b_1z^{-1} + b_2z^{-2} + \dots + b_Nz^{-N}}{1 + a_1z^{-1} + a_2z^{-2} + \dots + a_Nz^{-N}} \quad (5.1)$$

where  $N$  denotes the filter order. The first order IIR filter in the Z-domain is therefore given from Equation (5.1) as:

$$H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{b_0 + b_1z^{-1}}{1 + a_1z^{-1}} \quad (5.2)$$

In order to implement the first order IIR filter on a microcontroller, the discrete time domain representation of the filter, described by Equation (5.2), must be transformed into a time difference equation as follows:

$$y(k) = b_0x(k) + b_1x(k - 1) - a_1y(k - 1) \quad (5.3)$$

Equation (5.3) represents a Direct Form I implementation of a first order IIR filter. It is well known that Direct Form I (DF-I) and Direct Form II (DF-II) implementations of an IIR filter are generally sensitive to parameter quantization if a finite precision arithmetic is considered. This, however, can be neglected when the filter transfer function is broken down into low order sections, that is. first or second order. The main difference between DF-I and DF-II implementations of an IIR filter is in the number of delay buffers and in the number of guard bits required to handle the potential overflow. The DF-II implementation requires fewer delay buffers than DF-I, hence less data memory is utilized. On the other hand, since the poles come first in the DF-II realization, the signal entering the state delay-line typically requires a larger dynamic range than the output signal  $y(k)$ . Therefore, overflow can occur at the delay-line input of the DF-II implementation, unlike in the DF-I implementation.

Because there are two delay buffers necessary for both DF-I and DF-II implementation of the first order IIR filter, the DF-I implementation was chosen to be used in the [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR1](#) function.

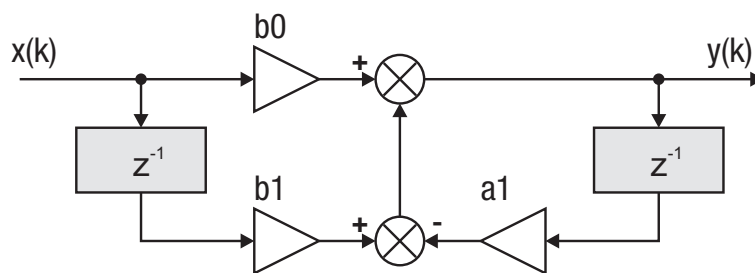


Figure 5-1: Direct Form 1 first order IIR filter

The coefficients of the filter depicted in Figure 5-1 can be designed to meet the requirements for the first order Low (LPF) or High Pass (HPF) filters. Filter coefficients can be calculated using various tools, for example, the Matlab *butter* function. In order to avoid overflow during the calculation of the [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR1](#) function, filter coefficients must be divided by eight. The coefficient quantization error due to finite precision arithmetic can be neglected in the case of a first order filter. Therefore, the calculation of coefficients can be done using Matlab as follows:

```
freq_cut    = 100;
T_sampling  = 100e-6;

[b,a]=butter(1,[freq_cut*T_sampling*2], 'low');
sys=tf(b,a,T_sampling);
bode(sys)

f32B0 = b(1)/8;
f32B1 = b(2)/8;
f32A1 = a(2)/8;
disp('Coefficients for GDFLIB_FilterIIR1 function:');
disp(['f32B0 = FRAC32(' num2str(f32B0) ')']);
disp(['f32B1 = FRAC32(' num2str(f32B1) ')']);
disp(['f32A1 = FRAC32(' num2str(f32A1) ')']);
```

## GDFLIB\_FilterIIR1

### 5.3.6 Caution

Because of fixed point implementation, and to avoid overflow during the calculation of the [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR1](#) function, filter coefficients must be divided by eight. Function output is internally multiplied by eight to correct the coefficient scaling.

### 5.3.7 Note

The filter delay line includes two delay buffers which should be reset after filter initialization. This can be done by assigning to the filter instance a [GDFLIB\\_FILTER\\_IIR1\\_DEFAULT](#) macro during instance declaration or by calling the [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR1Init](#) function.

### 5.3.8 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 5.3.9 Code Example

```
#include "gdflib.h"

Frac32 f32Input;
Frac32 f32Output;

GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR1_T trMyIIR1 = GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR1_DEFAULT;

void main(void)
{
    // input value = 0.25
    f32Input = FRAC32(0.25);

    // filter coefficients (LPF 100Hz, Ts=100e-6)
    trMyIIR1.trFiltCoeff.f32B0 = FRAC32(0.030468747091254/8);
    trMyIIR1.trFiltCoeff.f32B1 = FRAC32(0.030468747091254/8);
    trMyIIR1.trFiltCoeff.f32A1 = FRAC32(-0.939062505817492/8);
    GDFLIB_FilterIIR1Init(&trMyIIR1);

    // output should be 0x00F99998
    f32Output = GDFLIB_FilterIIR1(f32Input, &trMyIIR1);
}
```

## 5.4 GDFLIB\_FilterIIR2Init

### 5.4.1 Declaration

```
void GDFLIB_FilterIIR2InitANSIC(GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR2_T *pParam)
```

### 5.4.2 Alias

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterIIR2Init(pParam) \
    GDFLIB_FilterIIR2InitANSIC(pParam)
```

### 5.4.3 Arguments

Table 5-4: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
<a href="#">GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR2_T</a> *	pParam	in/out	Pointer to the filter structure with a filter buffer and filter parameters

### 5.4.4 Return

The function returns data type void.

### 5.4.5 Description

This function clears the internal buffers of a second order IIR filter. It shall be called after filter parameter initialization and whenever the filter initialization is required.

### 5.4.6 Note

This function shall not be called together with [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR2](#) unless periodic clearing of filter buffers is required.

### 5.4.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 5.4.8 Code Example

```
#include "gdflib.h"

Frac32 f32Input;
Frac32 f32Output;

GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR2_T trMyIIR2 = GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR2_DEFAULT;
```

## GDFLIB\_FilterIIR2Init

```

void main(void)
{
    // input value = 0.25
    f32Input = FRAC32(0.25);

    // filter coefficients (BPF 400-625Hz, Ts=100e-6)
    trMyIIR2.trFiltCoeff.f32B0 = FRAC32(0.066122101544579/8);
    trMyIIR2.trFiltCoeff.f32B1 = FRAC32(0.0);
    trMyIIR2.trFiltCoeff.f32B2 = FRAC32(-0.066122101544579/8);
    trMyIIR2.trFiltCoeff.f32A1 = FRAC32(-1.776189018043779/8);
    trMyIIR2.trFiltCoeff.f32A2 = FRAC32(0.867755796910841/8);
    GDFLIB_FilterIIR2Init(&trMyIIR2);
}

```

### 5.4.9 Performance

Table 5-5: [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR2Init](#) function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	118/118/140
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	95/63/39
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	95/60/39

## 5.5 GDFLIB\_FilterIIR2

### 5.5.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GDFLIB_FilterIIR2ANSIC(Frac32 f32In, GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR2_T *pParam)
```

### 5.5.2 Alias

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterIIR2(w32In, pParam) \
    GDFLIB_FilterIIR2ANSIC(w32In, pParam)
```

### 5.5.3 Arguments

Table 5-6: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
<a href="#">GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR2_T</a> *	pParam	in/out	Pointer to the filter structure with a filter buffer and filter parameters
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32In	in	Value of input signal to be filtered in step (k). The value is a 32-bit number in the 1.31 fractional format

### 5.5.4 Return

The function returns a 32-bit value in fractional format 1.31, representing the filtered value of the input signal in step (k).

### 5.5.5 Description

The [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR2ANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible implementation, can be called via the function alias [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR2](#).

This function calculates the second order infinite impulse (IIR) filter. The IIR filters are also called recursive filters because both the input and the previously calculated output values are used for calculation of the filter equation in each step. This form of feedback enables transfer of the energy from the output to the input, which theoretically leads to an infinitely long impulse response (IIR). A general form of the IIR filter expressed as a transfer function in the Z-domain is described as follows:

$$H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{b_0 + b_1z^{-1} + b_2z^{-2} + \dots + b_Nz^{-N}}{1 + a_1z^{-1} + a_2z^{-2} + \dots + a_Nz^{-N}} \quad (5.4)$$

where  $N$  denotes the filter order. The second order IIR filter in the Z-domain is therefore given from Equation (5.4) as:

$$H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{b_0 + b_1z^{-1} + b_2z^{-2}}{1 + a_1z^{-1} + a_2z^{-2}} \quad (5.5)$$

## GDFLIB\_FilterIIR2

In order to implement the second order IIR filter on a microcontroller, the discrete time domain representation of the filter, described by Equation (5.5), must be transformed into a time difference equation as follows:

$$y(k) = b_0x(k) + b_1x(k - 1) + b_2x(k - 2) - a_1y(k - 1) - a_2y(k - 2) \quad (5.6)$$

Equation (5.6) represents a Direct Form I implementation of a second order IIR filter. It is well known that Direct Form I (DF-I) and Direct Form II (DF-II) implementations of an IIR filter are generally sensitive to parameter quantization if a finite precision arithmetic is considered. This, however, can be neglected when the filter transfer function is broken down into low order sections, that is first or second order. The main difference between DF-I and DF-II implementations of an IIR filter is in the number of delay buffers and in the number of guard bits required to handle the potential overflow. The DF-II implementation requires fewer delay buffers than DF-I, hence less data memory is utilized. On the other hand, since the poles come first in the DF-II realization, the signal entering the state delay-line typically requires a larger dynamic range than the output signal  $y(k)$ . Therefore, overflow can occur at the delay-line input of the DF-II implementation, unlike in the DF-I implementation.

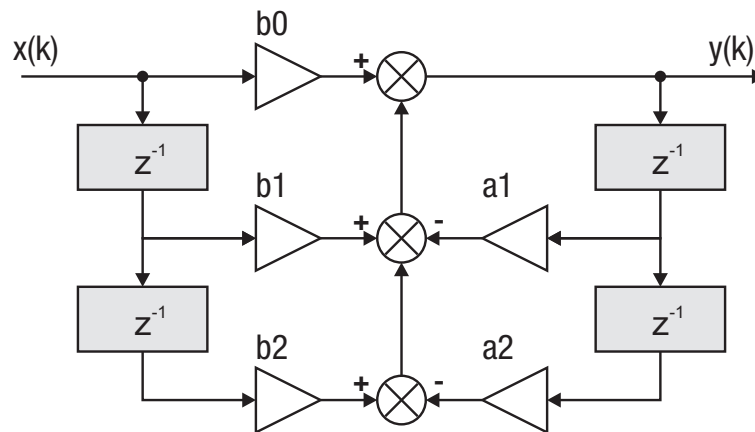


Figure 5-2: Direct Form 1 second order IIR filter

The coefficients of the filter depicted in Figure 5-2 can be designed to meet the requirements for the second order Band Pass (BPF) or Band Stop (BSF) filters. Filter coefficients can be calculated using various tools, for example the Matlab *butter* function. In order to avoid overflow during the calculation of the `GDFLIB_FilterIIR2` function, filter coefficients must be divided by eight. The coefficient quantization error due to finite precision arithmetic can be neglected in the case of a second order filter. Therefore, calculation of coefficients can be done using Matlab as follows:

```
freq_bot    = 400;
freq_top    = 625;
T_sampling  = 100e-6;

[b,a]= butter(1,[freq_bot freq_top]*T_sampling *2, 'bandpass');
sys =tf(b,a,T_sampling);
bode(sys,[freq_bot:1:freq_top]*2*pi)

f32B0 = b(1)/8;
f32B1 = b(2)/8;
f32B2 = b(3)/8;
```

```
f32A1 = a(2)/8;
f32A2 = a(3)/8;
disp (' Coefficients for GDFLIB_FilterIIR2 function :');
disp ([ 'f32B0 = FRAC32(' num2str( f32B0 ) ')']);
disp ([ 'f32B1 = FRAC32(' num2str( f32B1 ) ')']);
disp ([ 'f32B2 = FRAC32(' num2str( f32B2 ) ')']);
disp ([ 'f32A1 = FRAC32(' num2str( f32A1 ) ')']);
disp ([ 'f32A2 = FRAC32(' num2str( f32A2 ) ')']);
```

### 5.5.6 Caution

Because of fixed point implementation, and to avoid overflow during the calculation of the [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR2](#) function, filter coefficients must be divided by eight. Function output is internally multiplied by eight to correct the coefficient scaling.

### 5.5.7 Note

The filter delay line includes four delay buffers which should be reset after filter initialization. This can be done by assigning to the filter instance a [GDFLIB\\_FILTER\\_IIR2\\_DEFAULT](#) macro during instance declaration or by calling the [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR2Init](#) function.

### 5.5.8 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 5.5.9 Code Example

```
#include "gdflib.h"

Frac32 f32Input;
Frac32 f32Output;

GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR2_T trMyIIR2 = GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR2_DEFAULT;

void main(void)
{
    // input value = 0.25
    f32Input = FRAC32(0.25);

    // filter coefficients (BPF 400-625Hz, Ts=100e-6)
    trMyIIR2.trFiltCoeff.f32B0 = FRAC32(0.066122101544579/8);
    trMyIIR2.trFiltCoeff.f32B1 = FRAC32(0.0);
    trMyIIR2.trFiltCoeff.f32B2 = FRAC32(-0.066122101544579/8);
    trMyIIR2.trFiltCoeff.f32A1 = FRAC32(-1.776189018043779/8);
    trMyIIR2.trFiltCoeff.f32A2 = FRAC32(0.867755796910841/8);
    GDFLIB_FilterIIR2Init(&trMyIIR2);

    // output should be 0x0021DAC18
    f32Output = GDFLIB_FilterIIR2(f32Input, &trMyIIR2);
}
```



## 5.6 GDFLIB\_FilterFIRInit

### 5.6.1 Declaration

```
void GDFLIB_FilterFIRInitANSIC(const GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_PARAM_T *const pParam,
GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_STATE_T *const pState, Frac32 *pf32InBuf)
```

### 5.6.2 Alias

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterFIRInit(pParam, pState, pInBuf) \
    GDFLIB_FilterFIRInitANSIC((pParam), (pState), (pInBuf))
```

### 5.6.3 Arguments

Table 5-7: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
const <a href="#">GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_PARAM_T</a> *const	pParam	in	Pointer to the parameters structure.
<a href="#">GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_STATE_T</a> *const	pState	out	Pointer to the state structure.
<a href="#">Frac32</a> *	pf32InBuf	in/out	Pointer to a buffer for storing filter input signal values, must point to a R/W memory region and must be a filter order + 1 long.

### 5.6.4 Return

The function returns data type void.

### 5.6.5 Description

The function performs the initialization procedure for the [GDFLIB\\_FilterFIR](#) function. In particular, the function performs the following operations:

1. Resets the input buffer index to zero
2. Initializes the input buffer pointer to the pointer provided as an argument
3. Resets the input buffer

After initialization made by the function, the parameters and state structures should be provided as arguments to calls of the [GDFLIB\\_FilterFIR](#) function.

### 5.6.6 Caution

No check is performed for R/W capability and the length of the input buffer ( pState->pf32InBuf).

### 5.6.7 Note

The input buffer pointer ( State->pf32InBuf) must point to a Read/Write memory region, which must be at least as long as the number of filter taps. The number of taps in a filter is equal to the filter order + 1. There is no restriction as to the location of the parameters structure as long as it is readable.

### 5.6.8 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant only if the calling code is provided with a distinct instance of the structure pointed to by pState.

### 5.6.9 Code Example

```
#include "gdflib.h"

#define FIR_NUMTAPS 16
#define FIR_NUMTAPS_MAX 64
#define FIR_ORDER (FIR_NUMTAPS - 1)

GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_PARAM_T Param;
GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_STATE_T State;

Frac32 af32InBuf[FIR_NUMTAPS_MAX];
Frac32 af32CoefBuf[FIR_NUMTAPS_MAX];

#define OUT_LEN 16

void main(void)
{
    int ii;
    Frac32 aw32outBuf[OUT_LEN];

    // Define a simple low-pass filter
    // The filter coefficients were calculated by the following
    // Matlab function (coefficients are contained in Hd.Numerator):
    //
    //function Hd = fir_example
    //FIR_EXAMPLE Returns a discrete-time filter object.
    //N      = 15;
    //F6dB   = 0.5;
    //
    //h = fdesign.lowpass('n,fc', N, F6dB);
    //
    //Hd = design(h, 'window');
    //return;
    ii = 0;
    af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0xFFB10C14;
    af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0xFF779D25;
    af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0x01387DD7;
```

## GDFLIB\_FilterFIRInit

```

af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0x028E6845;
af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0xFB245142;
af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0xF7183CC7;
af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0x11950A3C;
af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0x393ED867;
af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0x393ED867;
af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0x11950A3C;
af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0xF7183CC7;
af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0xFB245142;
af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0x028E6845;
af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0x01387DD7;
af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0xFF779D25;
af32CoefBuf[ii++] = 0xFFB10C14;

Param.u32Order = 15;
Param.pw32CoefBuf = &af32CoefBuf[0];

// Initialize FIR filter
GDFLIB_FilterFIRInit(&Param, &State, &af32InBuf[0]);

// Compute step response of the filter
for(ii=0; ii < OUT_LEN; ii++)
{
    aw32OutBuf[ii] = GDFLIB_FilterFIR(FRAC32(1.0), &Param, &State);
}

// aw32Out contains step response of the filter

return;
}

```

### 5.6.10 Performance

Table 5-8: GDFLIB\_FilterFIRInit function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	202/202/336
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	2020/1329/586
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	1978/1012/566

## 5.7 GDFLIB\_FilterFIR

### 5.7.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GDFLIB_FilterFIRANSIC(Frac32 f32In, const GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_PARAM_T *const
pParam, GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_STATE_T *const pState)
```

### 5.7.2 Alias

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterFIR(f32In, pParam, pState) \
    GDFLIB_FilterFIRANSIC((f32In), (pParam), (pState))
```

### 5.7.3 Arguments

Table 5-9: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32In	in	Input value.
const GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_PARAM_T *const	pParam	in	Pointer to the parameter structure.
GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_STATE_T *const	pState	in/out	Pointer to the filter state structure.

### 5.7.4 Return

The value of a filtered signal after processing by an FIR filter.

### 5.7.5 Description

The function performs the operation of an FIR filter on a sample-by-sample basis. At each new input to the FIR filter, the function should be called, which will return a new filtered value. The FIR filter is defined by the following formula:

$$y[n] = h_0x[n] + h_1x[n - 1] + \dots + h_Nx[n - N] \quad (5.7)$$

where:  $x[n]$  is the input signal,  $y[n]$  is the output signal,  $h_i$  are the filter coefficients, and  $N$  is the filter order. The number of taps of the filter is  $N + 1$  in this case. The multiply and accumulate operations are performed with 32 accumulation guard bits present, which means that no saturation is performed during computations. However, if the final value cannot fit in the return data type, saturation may occur. It should be noted, although rather theoretically, that no saturation is performed on the accumulation guard bits and an overflow over the accumulation guard bits may occur. The function assumes that the filter order is at least one, which is equivalent to two taps. The filter also cannot contain more than ffffffff (hexadecimal) taps, which is equivalent to the order of ffffffff (hexadecimal). The input values are recorded by the function

## GDFLIB\_FilterFIR

in the provided state structure in a circular buffer, pointed to by the state structure member `pState->pf32InBuf`. The buffer index is stored in `pState->u32Idx`, which points to the buffer element where a new input signal sample will be stored. The filter coefficients are stored in the parameter structure, in the structure member `pParam->pw32CoefBuf`. The first call to the function must be preceded by an initialization, which can be made through the [GDFLIB\\_FilterFIRInit](#) function. The [GDFLIB\\_FilterFIRInit](#) and then the [GDFLIB\\_FilterFIR](#) functions should be called with the same parameters.

### 5.7.6 Caution

The count of maximal clock cycles depends on the selected order of the filter.

### 5.7.7 Note

From the performance point of view, the function is designed to work with filters with a larger number of taps (equal order + 1). As a rule of thumb, if the number of taps is lower than 5, a different algorithm should be considered.

### 5.7.8 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant only if the calling code is provided with a distinct instance of the structure pointed to by `pState`.

### 5.7.9 Code Example

```
#include "gdfplib.h"

#define FIR_NUMTAPS 16
#define FIR_NUMTAPS_MAX 64
#define FIR_ORDER (FIR_NUMTAPS - 1)

GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_PARAM_T Param;
GDFLIB_FILTERFIR_STATE_T State;

Frac32 af32InBuf[FIR_NUMTAPS_MAX];
Frac32 af32CoefBuf[FIR_NUMTAPS_MAX];

#define OUT_LEN 16

void main(void)
{
    int ii;
    Frac32 aw32OutBuf[OUT_LEN];

    // Define a simple low-pass filter
    // The filter coefficients were calculated by the following
    // Matlab function (coefficients are contained in Hd.Numerator):
    //
    //function Hd = fir_example
    //FIR_EXAMPLE Returns a discrete-time filter object.
    //N      = 15;
    //F6dB   = 0.5;
```

```

//
//h = fdesign.lowpass('n,fc', N, F6dB);
//
//Hd = design(h, 'window');
//return;
ii = 0;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0xFFB10C14;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0xFF779D25;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0x01387DD7;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0x028E6845;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0xFB245142;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0xF7183CC7;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0x11950A3C;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0x393ED867;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0x393ED867;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0x11950A3C;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0xF7183CC7;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0xFB245142;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0x028E6845;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0x01387DD7;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0xFF779D25;
af32CoefBuf [ii++] = 0xFFB10C14;

Param.u32Order = 15;
Param.pw32CoefBuf = &af32CoefBuf [0];

// Initialize FIR filter
GDFLIB_FilterFIRInit(&Param, &State, &af32InBuf [0]);

// Compute step response of the filter
for(ii=0; ii < OUT_LEN; ii++)
{
    aw32OutBuf [ii] = GDFLIB_FilterFIR(FRAC32(1.0), &Param, &State);
}

// aw32Out contains step response of the filter

return;
}

```

## 5.8 GDFLIB\_FilterMAInit

### 5.8.1 Declaration

```
void GDFLIB_FilterMAInitANSIC(GDFLIB_FILTER_MA_T *pParam)
```

### 5.8.2 Alias

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterMAInit(pParam) \
    GDFLIB_FilterMAInitANSIC(pParam)
```

### 5.8.3 Arguments

Table 5-10: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
<a href="#">GDFLIB_FILTER_MA_T</a> *	pParam	in/out	Pointer to the filter structure with a filter accumulator and filter parameters

### 5.8.4 Return

The function returns data type void.

### 5.8.5 Description

This function clears the internal accumulator of a moving average filter. It shall be called after filter parameter initialization and whenever the filter initialization is required.

The size of the filter window (number of filtered points) shall be defined prior to this function call. The number of the filtered points is defined by assigning a value to the `u16NSamples` variable stored within the filter structure. This number represents the number of filtered points as a power of 2 as follows:

$$n_p = 2^{u16NSamples} \quad 0 \leq u16NSamples \leq 31 \quad (5.8)$$

### 5.8.6 Note

This function shall not be called together with [GDFLIB\\_FilterMA](#) unless periodic clearing of filter buffers is required.

### 5.8.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 5.8.8 Code Example

```
#include "gdflib.h"

GDFLIB_FILTER_MA_T trMyMA = GDFLIB_FILTER_MA_DEFAULT;

void main(void)
{
    GDFLIB_FilterMAInit(&trMyMA);
}
```

### 5.8.9 Performance

Table 5-11: [GDFLIB\\_FilterMAInit](#) function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	48/56/50
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	31/23/15
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	31/23/15



## 5.9 GDFLIB\_FilterMA

### 5.9.1 Declaration

```
Frac32 GDFLIB_FilterMAANSIC(Frac32 f32In, GDFLIB_FILTER_MA_T *pParam)
```

### 5.9.2 Alias

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterMA(f32In, pParam) \
    GDFLIB_FilterMAANSIC(f32In, pParam)
```

### 5.9.3 Arguments

Table 5-12: Function parameters

Type	Name	Dir.	Description
Frac32	f32In	in	Value of input signal to be filtered in step (k). The value is a 32-bit number in the Q1.31 format.
GDFLIB_FILTER_MA_T *	pParam	in/out	Pointer to the filter structure with a filter accumulator and filter parameters.

### 5.9.4 Return

The function returns a 32-bit value in format Q1.31, representing the filtered value of the input signal in step (k).

### 5.9.5 Description

The [GDFLIB\\_FilterMAANSIC](#) function, denoting ANSI-C compatible implementation, can be called via the function alias [GDFLIB\\_FilterMA](#).

This function calculates a recursive form of an average filter. The filter calculation consists of the following equations:

$$acc(k) = acc(k - 1) + x(k) \quad (5.9)$$

$$y(k) = \frac{acc(k)}{n_p} \quad (5.10)$$

$$acc(k) \leftarrow acc(k) - y(k) \quad (5.11)$$

where  $x(k)$  is the actual value of the input signal,  $acc(k)$  is the internal filter accumulator,  $y(k)$  is the actual filter output and  $n_p$  is the number of points in the filtered window. The size of the filter window (number of filtered points) shall be defined prior to this function call. The number of the

filtered points is defined by assigning a value to the `u16NSamples` variable stored within the filter structure. This number represents the number of filtered points as a power of 2 as follows:

$$n_p = 2^{u16NSamples} \quad 0 \leq u16NSamples \leq 31 \quad (5.12)$$

### 5.9.6 Note

The size of the filter window (number of filtered points) must be defined prior to this function call and must be equal to or greater than 0, and equal to or smaller than 31 ( $0 \leq u16NSamples \leq 31$ ).

### 5.9.7 Reentrancy

The function is reentrant.

### 5.9.8 Code Example

```
#include "gdflib.h"

Frac32 f32Input;
Frac32 f32Output;

GDFLIB_FILTER_MA_T trMyMA = GDFLIB_FILTER_MA_DEFAULT;

void main(void)
{
    // input value = 0.25
    f32Input = FRAC32(0.25);

    // filter window = 2^5 = 32 samples
    trMyMA.u16NSamples = 5;
    GDFLIB_FilterMAInit(&trMyMA);

    // output should be 0x1000000 = FRAC32(0.0078125)
    f32Output = GDFLIB_FilterMA(f32Input, &trMyMA);
}
```

### 5.9.9 Performance

Table 5-13: [GDFLIB\\_FilterMA](#) function performance

Code size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	48/56/50
Data size [bytes] CW/IAR/KEIL	0/0/0
Execution clock cycles max [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	31/23/15
Execution clock cycles min [clk] CW/IAR/KEIL	31/23/15

# CHAPTER 6: DATA TYPES

## 6.1 Defined in <SWLIBS\_Typedefs.h>

Table 6-1: Data types description

Type	Name	Description
typedef unsigned char	bool	basic boolean type
typedef unsigned char	UWord8	unsigned 8-bit integer type
typedef signed char	Word8	signed 8-bit integer type
typedef unsigned short	UWord16	unsigned 16-bit integer type
typedef signed short	Word16	signed 16-bit integer type
typedef unsigned int	UWord32	unsigned 32-bit integer type
typedef signed int	Word32	signed 32-bit integer type
typedef unsigned long long	UWord64	unsigned 64-bit integer type
typedef signed long long	Word64	signed 64-bit integer type
typedef unsigned char	UInt8	unsigned 8-bit integer type
typedef signed char	Int8	signed 8-bit integer type
typedef unsigned short	UInt16	unsigned 16-bit integer type
typedef signed short	Int16	signed 16-bit integer type
typedef unsigned int	UInt32	unsigned 32-bit integer type
typedef signed int	Int32	signed 32-bit integer type
typedef unsigned long long	UInt64	unsigned 64-bit integer type
typedef signed long long	Int64	signed 64-bit integer type
typedef <a href="#">Word16</a>	Frac16	16-bit signed fractional Q1.15 type
typedef <a href="#">Word32</a>	Frac32	32-bit signed fractional Q1.31 type

# CHAPTER 7: COMPOUND DATA TYPES

---

## 7.0.1 Compound Data Types Overview

- [FILTER\\_IIR1\\_COEFF\\_T](#)  
*Substructure containing filter coefficients*
- [FILTER\\_IIR2\\_COEFF\\_T](#)  
*Substructure containing filter coefficients*
- [GDFLIB\\_FILTER\\_IIR1\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing filter buffer and coefficients*
- [GDFLIB\\_FILTER\\_IIR2\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing filter buffer and coefficients*
- [GDFLIB\\_FILTER\\_MA\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing filter buffer and coefficients*
- [GDFLIB\\_FILTERFIR\\_PARAM\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing parameters of the filter*
- [GDFLIB\\_FILTERFIR\\_STATE\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing the current state of the filter*
- [GFLIB\\_ACOS\\_TAYLOR\\_COEF\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing five polynomial coefficients for one subinterval*
- [GFLIB\\_ACOS\\_TAYLOR\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing two substructures with polynomial coefficients to cover all subintervals*
- [GFLIB\\_ASIN\\_TAYLOR\\_COEF\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing five polynomial coefficients for one subinterval*
- [GFLIB\\_ASIN\\_TAYLOR\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing two substructures with polynomial coefficients to cover all subintervals*
- [GFLIB\\_ATAN\\_TAYLOR\\_COEF\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing four polynomial coefficients for one subinterval*

- [GFLIB\\_ATAN\\_TAYLOR\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing eight substructures with polynomial coefficients to cover all subintervals*
- [GFLIB\\_ATANYXSHIFTED\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing the parameter for the GFLIB\_AtanyXShifted function*
- [GFLIB\\_CONTROLLER\\_PI\\_P\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing parameters and states of the the parallel form PI controller*
- [GFLIB\\_CONTROLLER\\_PI\\_R\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing parameters and states of the recurrent form PI controller*
- [GFLIB\\_CONTROLLER\\_PIAW\\_P\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing parameters and states of the the parallel form PI controller with anti-windup*
- [GFLIB\\_COSTLR\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing one array of five 32-bit elements for storing coefficients of a Taylor polynomial*
- [GFLIB\\_HYST\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing parameters and states for the hysteresis function implemented in GFLIB\_Hyst*
- [GFLIB\\_INTEGRATOR\\_TR\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing integrator parameters and coefficients*
- [GFLIB\\_LIMIT\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing the limits*
- [GFLIB\\_LOWERLIMIT\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing the lower limit*
- [GFLIB\\_LUT1D\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing look-up table parameters*
- [GFLIB\\_RAMP\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing controller parameters and coefficients*
- [GFLIB\\_SINTLR\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing one array of five 32-bit elements for storing coefficients of a Taylor polynomial*
- [GFLIB\\_TAN\\_TAYLOR\\_COEF\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing four polynomial coefficients for one subinterval*

- [GFLIB\\_TANTLR\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing eight substructures with polynomial coefficients to cover all subintervals*
- [GFLIB\\_UPPERLIMIT\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing the upper limit*
- [GMCLIB\\_ELIM\\_DC\\_BUS\\_RIP\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing the PWM modulation index and the measured value of the DC bus voltage for calculation of the DC bus ripple elimination*
- [GMCLIB\\_VectorLimit\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing the limits*
- [MCLIB\\_2\\_COOR\\_SYST\\_ALPHA\\_BETA\\_T](#)  
*Structure data type for two phase system with alpha and beta components - input/output variables*
- [MCLIB\\_2\\_COOR\\_SYST\\_D\\_Q\\_T](#)  
*Structure data type for two phase system with direct and quadrature components - input/output variables*
- [MCLIB\\_3\\_COOR\\_SYST\\_T](#)  
*Structure data type for three phase system with A,B and C components - input/output variables*
- [MCLIB\\_ANGLE\\_T](#)  
*Structure data type for two axis of two phase system with sine and cosine components - input/output variables*
- [MCLIB\\_DECOUPLING\\_PMSM\\_PARAM\\_T](#)  
*Structure containing coefficients for calculation of the decoupling algorithm implemented in the GMCLIB\_DecouplingPMSM function*

FILTER\_IIR1\_COEFF\_T

## 7.1 FILTER\_IIR1\_COEFF\_T

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterIIR1.h>
```

### 7.1.1 Description

Substructure containing filter coefficients.

### 7.1.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-1: Members description

Type	Name	Description
Frac32	f32B0	b0 coefficient of an IIR1 filter, 32-bit
Frac32	f32B1	b1 coefficient of an IIR1 filter, 32-bit
Frac32	f32A1	a1 coefficient of an IIR1 filter, 32-bit

## 7.2 FILTER\_IIR2\_COEFF\_T

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterIIR2.h>
```

### 7.2.1 Description

Substructure containing filter coefficients.

### 7.2.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-2: Members description

Type	Name	Description
Frac32	f32B0	b0 coefficient of an IIR2 filter, 32-bit
Frac32	f32B1	b1 coefficient of an IIR2 filter, 32-bit
Frac32	f32B2	b2 coefficient of an IIR2 filter, 32-bit
Frac32	f32A1	a1 coefficient of an IIR2 filter, 32-bit
Frac32	f32A2	a2 coefficient of an IIR2 filter, 32-bit



GDFLIB\_FILTER\_IIR1\_T

## 7.3 GDFLIB\_FILTER\_IIR1\_T

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterIIR1.h>
```

### 7.3.1 Description

Structure containing filter buffer and coefficients.

### 7.3.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-3: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">FILTER_IIR1_COEFF_T</a>	trFiltCoeff	filter coefficients substructure
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32FiltBufferX[2]	input buffer of an IIR1 filter
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32FiltBufferY[2]	internal accumulator buffer

## 7.4 GDFLIB\_FILTER\_IIR2\_T

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterIIR2.h>
```

### 7.4.1 Description

Structure containing filter buffer and coefficients.

### 7.4.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-4: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">FILTER_IIR2_COEFF_T</a>	trFiltCoeff	filter coefficients substructure
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32FiltBufferX[3]	input buffer of an IIR2 filter
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32FiltBufferY[3]	internal accumulator buffer

GDFLIB\_FILTER\_MA\_T

## 7.5 GDFLIB\_FILTER\_MA\_T

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterMA.h>
```

### 7.5.1 Description

Structure containing filter buffer and coefficients.

### 7.5.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-5: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a> <a href="#">UWord16</a>	f32Acc u16NSamples	filter accumulator number of samples for averaging, filter sample window [0,31]

## 7.6 GDFLIB\_FILTERFIR\_PARAM\_T

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterFIR.h>
```

### 7.6.1 Description

Structure containing parameters of the filter.

### 7.6.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-6: Members description

Type	Name	Description
UWord32 const Frac32 *	u32Order pf32CoefBuf	FIR filter order, must be 1 or more. FIR filter coefficients buffer.

GDFLIB\_FILTERFIR\_STATE\_T

## 7.7 GDFLIB\_FILTERFIR\_STATE\_T

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterFIR.h>
```

### 7.7.1 Description

Structure containing the current state of the filter.

### 7.7.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-7: Members description

Type	Name	Description
UWord32	u32Idx	Input buffer index.
Frac32 *	pf32InBuf	Pointer to the input buffer.

## 7.8 GFLIB\_ACOS\_TAYLOR\_COEF\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Acos.h>
```

### 7.8.1 Description

Structure containing five polynomial coefficients for one subinterval. Output of  $\arccos(w32In)$  for interval  $[0, 1)$  of the input ratio is divided into two subsectors. Polynomial approximation is done using a 5th order polynomial for each subsector respectively. Five coefficients for a single subinterval are stored in this [GFLIB\\_ACOS\\_TAYLOR\\_COEF\\_T](#) structure.

### 7.8.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-8: Members description

Type	Name	Description
const <a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32a[5]	Array of five 32-bit elements for storing coefficients of the piece-wise polynomial.

GFLIB\_ACOS\_TAYLOR\_T

## 7.9 GFLIB\_ACOS\_TAYLOR\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Acos.h>
```

### 7.9.1 Description

Structure containing two substructures with polynomial coefficients to cover all subintervals. Output of  $\arccos(w32In)$  for interval  $[0, 1)$  of the input ratio is divided into two subsectors. Polynomial approximation is done using a 5th order polynomial, for each subsector respectively. Two arrays, each including five polynomial coefficients for each subinterval, are stored in this [GFLIB\\_ACOS\\_TAYLOR\\_T](#) structure.

By calling the function alias [GFLIB\\_Acos](#), default values of the coefficients are used. Polynomial coefficients can be modified by the user and in such a case the full function call shall be used, that is [GFLIB\\_AcosANSIC](#).

### 7.9.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-9: Members description

Type	Name	Description
const <a href="#">GFLIB_ACOS_TAYLOR_COEF_T</a>	GFLIB_ACOS_SECTOR[2]	Array of two elements for storing two subarrays (each subarray contains five 32-bit coefficients) for all subintervals.

## 7.10 GFLIB\_ASIN\_TAYLOR\_COEF\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Asin.h>
```

### 7.10.1 Description

Structure containing five polynomial coefficients for one subinterval. Output of  $\arcsin(w32In)$  for interval  $[0, 1)$  of the input ratio is divided into two subsectors. Polynomial approximation is done using a 5th order polynomial for each subsector respectively. Five coefficients for a single subinterval are stored in this [GFLIB\\_ASIN\\_TAYLOR\\_COEF\\_T](#) structure.

### 7.10.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-10: Members description

Type	Name	Description
const <a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32a[5]	Array of five 32-bit elements for storing coefficients of the piece-wise polynomial.



GFLIB\_ASIN\_TAYLOR\_T

## 7.11 GFLIB\_ASIN\_TAYLOR\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Asin.h>
```

### 7.11.1 Description

Structure containing two substructures with polynomial coefficients to cover all subintervals. Output of  $\arcsin(w32In)$  for interval  $[0, 1)$  of the input ratio is divided into two subsectors. Polynomial approximation is done using a 5th order polynomial, for each subsector respectively. Two arrays, each including five polynomial coefficients for each subinterval, are stored in this [GFLIB\\_ASIN\\_TAYLOR\\_T](#) structure.

By calling the function alias [GFLIB\\_Asin](#), default values of the coefficients are used. Polynomial coefficients can be modified by the user and in such a case the full function call shall be used, that is [GFLIB\\_AsinANSIC](#).

### 7.11.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-11: Members description

Type	Name	Description
const <a href="#">GFLIB_ASIN_TAYLOR_COEF_T</a>	GFLIB_ASIN_SECTOR[2]	Array of two elements for storing eight subarrays (each subarray contains four 32-bit coefficients) for all subintervals.

## 7.12 GFLIB\_ATAN\_TAYLOR\_COEF\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Atan.h>
```

### 7.12.1 Description

Structure containing four polynomial coefficients for one subinterval. Output of  $\arctan(w32In)$  for interval  $[0, 1)$  of the input ratio is divided into eight subsectors. Polynomial approximation is done using a 4th order polynomial, for each subsector respectively. Four coefficients for a single subinterval are stored in this [GFLIB\\_ATAN\\_TAYLOR\\_COEF\\_T](#) structure.

### 7.12.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-12: Members description

Type	Name	Description
const <a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32a[4]	Array of five 32-bit elements for storing coefficients of the piece-wise polynomial.

GFLIB\_ATAN\_TAYLOR\_T

## 7.13 GFLIB\_ATAN\_TAYLOR\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Atan.h>
```

### 7.13.1 Description

Structure containing eight substructures with polynomial coefficients to cover all subintervals. Output of  $\arctan(w32In)$  for interval  $[0, 1)$  of the input ratio is divided into eight subsectors. Polynomial approximation is done using a 4th order polynomial, for each subsector respectively. Eight arrays, each including four polynomial coefficients for each subinterval, are stored in this [GFLIB\\_ATAN\\_TAYLOR\\_COEF\\_T](#) structure.

By the calling function alias [GFLIB\\_Atan](#), default values of the coefficients are used. Polynomial coefficients can be modified by the user and in such a case the full function call shall be used, that is [GFLIB\\_AtanANSIC](#).

### 7.13.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-13: Members description

Type	Name	Description
const <a href="#">GFLIB_ATAN_TAYLOR_COEF_T</a>	GFLIB_ATAN_SECTOR[8]	Array of eight elements for storing eight subarrays (each subarray contains four 32-bit coefficients) for all subintervals.

## 7.14 GFLIB\_ATANYXSHIFTED\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_AtanyXShifted.h>
```

### 7.14.1 Description

Structure containing the parameter for the [GFLIB\\_AtanyXShifted](#) function.

### 7.14.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-14: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32Ky	Multiplication coefficient for the y-signal.
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32Kx	
<a href="#">Word32</a>	w32Ny	Scaling coefficient for the y-signal.
<a href="#">Word32</a>	w32Nx	Scaling coefficient for the x-signal.
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32ThetaAdj	Adjusting angle.

## 7.15 GFLIB\_CONTROLLER\_PI\_P\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_ControllerPIp.h>
```

### 7.15.1 Description

Structure containing parameters and states of the the parallel form PI controller.

### 7.15.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-15: Members description

Type	Name	Description
Frac32	f32PropGain	Proportional Gain, fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$
Frac32	f32IntegGain	Integral Gain, fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$
Word16	w16PropGainShift	Proportional Gain Shift, integer format $[-31, 31]$
Word16	w16IntegGainShift	Integral Gain Shift, integer format $[-31, 31]$
Frac32	f32IntegPartK_1	State variable integral part at step k-1
Frac32	f32InK_1	State variable input error at step k-1

## 7.16 GFLIB\_CONTROLLER\_PI\_R\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_ControllerPIr.h>
```

### 7.16.1 Description

Structure containing parameters and states of the recurrent form PI controller.

### 7.16.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-16: Members description

Type	Name	Description
Frac32	f32CC1sc	CC1 coefficient, fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$
Frac32	f32CC2sc	CC2 coefficient, fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$
Frac32	f32Acc	Internal controller accumulator
Frac32	f32InErrK1	Controller input from the previous calculation step
UWord16	u16NShift	Scaling factor for controller coefficients, integer format $[0, 31]$

## 7.17 GFLIB\_CONTROLLER\_PIAW\_P\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_ControllerPIpAW.h>
```

### 7.17.1 Description

Structure containing parameters and states of the the parallel form PI controller with anti-windup.

### 7.17.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-17: Members description

Type	Name	Description
Frac32	f32PropGain	Proportional Gain, fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$
Frac32	f32IntegGain	Integral Gain, fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$
Word16	w16PropGainShift	Proportional Gain Shift, integer format $[-31, 31]$
Word16	w16IntegGainShift	Integral Gain Shift, integer format $[-31, 31]$
Frac32	f32LowerLimit	Lower Limit of the controller, fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$
Frac32	f32UpperLimit	Upper Limit of the controller, fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$
Frac32	f32IntegPartK_1	State variable integral part at step k-1
Frac32	f32InK_1	State variable input error at step k-1
UWord16	u16LimitFlag	Limitation flag, if set to 1, the controller output has reached either the UpperLimit or LowerLimit

## 7.18 GFLIB\_COSTLR\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Cos.h>
```

### 7.18.1 Description

Structure containing one array of five 32-bit elements for storing coefficients of a Taylor polynomial. By calling the function alias [GFLIB\\_Cos](#), default values of the coefficients are used. Polynomial coefficients can be modified by the user and in such a case the full function call shall be used, that is [GFLIB\\_CosANSIC](#).

### 7.18.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-18: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32A[5]	Array of five 32-bit elements for storing coefficients of the Taylor polynomial.



GFLIB\_HYST\_T

## 7.19 GFLIB\_HYST\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Hyst.h>
```

### 7.19.1 Description

Structure containing parameters and states for the hysteresis function implemented in [GFLIB\\_Hyst](#).

### 7.19.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-19: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32HystOn	Value determining the upper threshold; fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$ .
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32HystOff	Value determining the lower threshold; fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$ .
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32OutValOn	Value of the output when input is higher than the upper threshold; fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$ .
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32OutValOff	Value of the output when input is the lower than lower threshold; fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$ .
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32OutState	Actual state of the output; fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$ .

## 7.20 GFLIB\_INTEGRATOR\_TR\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_IntegratorTR.h>
```

### 7.20.1 Description

Structure containing integrator parameters and coefficients.

### 7.20.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-20: Members description

Type	Name	Description
Frac32	f32State	integrator state value
Frac32	f32InK1	input value in step k-1
Frac32	f32C1	integrator coefficient = $\frac{E_{MAX} \cdot T_s}{U_{MAX} \cdot 2}$ . $2^{-u16NShift}$
UWord16	u16NShift	Scaling factor for the integrator coefficient f32C1, integer format [0, 31]

GFLIB\_LIMIT\_T

## 7.21 GFLIB\_LIMIT\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Limit.h>
```

### 7.21.1 Description

Structure containing the limits.

### 7.21.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-21: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32LowerLimit	Lower limit.
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32UpperLimit	Upper limit.

## 7.22 GFLIB\_LOWERLIMIT\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_LowerLimit.h>
```

### 7.22.1 Description

Structure containing the lower limit.

### 7.22.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-22: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32LowerLimit	Lower limit.

GFLIB\_LUT1D\_T

## 7.23 GFLIB\_LUT1D\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Lut1D.h>
```

### 7.23.1 Description

Structure containing look-up table parameters.

### 7.23.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-23: Members description

Type	Name	Description
Word32	w32ShamOffset	Shift amount for extracting the fractional offset within an interpolated interval.
Word32	w32ShamIntvl	Shift amount for extracting the interval index of an interpolated interval.
const Frac32 *	pf32Table	Table holding ordinate values of interpolating intervals.

## 7.24 GFLIB\_RAMP\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Ramp.h>
```

### 7.24.1 Description

Structure containing controller parameters and coefficients.

### 7.24.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-24: Members description

Type	Name	Description
Frac32	f32State	Ramp state value
Frac32	f32RampUp	Ramp up increment coefficient
Frac32	f32RampDown	Ramp down increment(decrement) coefficient

GFLIB\_SINTLR\_T

## 7.25 GFLIB\_SINTLR\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Sin.h>
```

### 7.25.1 Description

Structure containing one array of five 32-bit elements for storing coefficients of a Taylor polynomial. By calling the function alias [GFLIB\\_Sin](#), default values of the coefficients are used. Polynomial coefficients can be modified by the user and in such a case the full function call shall be used, that is [GFLIB\\_SinANSIC](#).

### 7.25.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-25: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32A[5]	Array of five 32-bit elements for storing coefficients of the Taylor polynomial.

## 7.26 GFLIB\_TAN\_TAYLOR\_COEF\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Tan.h>
```

### 7.26.1 Description

Structure containing four polynomial coefficients for one subinterval. Output of  $\tan(\pi \cdot w32In)$  for interval  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4})$  of the input angles is divided into eight subsectors. Polynomial approximation is done using a 4th order polynomial, for each subsector respectively. Four coefficients for a single subinterval are stored in this [GFLIB\\_TAN\\_TAYLOR\\_COEF\\_T](#) structure.

### 7.26.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-26: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32A[4]	Array of four 32-bit elements for storing the polynomial coefficients for one subinterval.



GFLIB\_TANTLR\_T

## 7.27 GFLIB\_TANTLR\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_Tan.h>
```

### 7.27.1 Description

Structure containing eight substructures with polynomial coefficients to cover all subintervals. Output of  $\tan(\pi \cdot w32In)$  for interval  $[0, \frac{\pi}{4})$  of the input angles is divided into eight subsectors. Polynomial approximation is done using a 4th order polynomial, for each subsector respectively. Eight arrays, each including four polynomial coefficients for each subinterval, are stored in this [GFLIB\\_TANTLR\\_T](#) structure.

By calling the function alias [GFLIB\\_Tan](#), default values of the coefficients are used. Polynomial coefficients can be modified by the user and in such a case the full function call shall be used, that is [GFLIB\\_TanANSIC](#).

### 7.27.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-27: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">GFLIB_TAN_TAYLOR_COEF_T</a>	GFLIB_TAN_SECTOR[8]	Array of eight elements for storing eight subarrays (each subarray contains four 32-bit coefficients) for all subintervals.

## 7.28 GFLIB\_UPPERLIMIT\_T

```
#include <GFLIB_UpperLimit.h>
```

### 7.28.1 Description

Structure containing the upper limit.

### 7.28.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-28: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32UpperLimit	Upper Limit.

GMCLIB\_ELIM\_DC\_BUS\_RIP\_T

## 7.29 GMCLIB\_ELIM\_DC\_BUS\_RIP\_T

```
#include <GMCLIB_ElimDcBusRip.h>
```

### 7.29.1 Description

Structure containing the PWM modulation index and the measured value of the DC bus voltage for calculation of the DC bus ripple elimination.

### 7.29.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-29: Members description

Type	Name	Description
Frac32	f32ModIndex	Inverse Modulation Index, fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$ , must be 0 or positive.
Frac32	f32ArgDcBusMsr	Measured DC bus voltage, fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$ , must be 0 or positive.

## 7.30 GMCLIB\_VectorLimit\_T

```
#include <GMCLIB_VectorLimit.h>
```

### 7.30.1 Description

Structure containing the limits.

### 7.30.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-30: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32Lim	The maximum magnitude of the input vector. The defined magnitude must be positive and equal to or greater than $2^{-15}$ .

MCLIB\_2\_COOR\_SYST\_ALPHA\_BETA\_T

## 7.31 MCLIB\_2\_COOR\_SYST\_ALPHA\_BETA\_T

```
#include <SWLIBS_Typedefs.h>
```

### 7.31.1 Description

Structure data type for two phase system with alpha and beta components - input/output variables.

### 7.31.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-31: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32Alpha	Alpha component, type signed 32-bit fractional
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32Beta	Beta component, type signed 32-bit fractional

## 7.32 MCLIB\_2\_COOR\_SYST\_D\_Q\_T

```
#include <SWLIBS_Typedefs.h>
```

### 7.32.1 Description

Structure data type for two phase system with direct and quadrature components - input/output variables.

### 7.32.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-32: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32D	Direct axis component, type signed 32-bit fractional
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32Q	Quadrature axis component, type signed 32-bit fractional

MCLIB\_3\_COOR\_SYST\_T

## 7.33 MCLIB\_3\_COOR\_SYST\_T

```
#include <SWLIBS_Typedefs.h>
```

### 7.33.1 Description

Structure data type for three phase system with A,B and C components - input/output variables.

### 7.33.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-33: Members description

Type	Name	Description
Frac32	f32A	A component, type signed 32-bit fractional
Frac32	f32B	B component, type signed 32-bit fractional
Frac32	f32C	C component, type signed 32-bit fractional

## 7.34 MCLIB\_ANGLE\_T

```
#include <SWLIBS_Typedefs.h>
```

### 7.34.1 Description

Structure data type for two axis of two phase system with sine and cosine components - input/output variables.

### 7.34.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-34: Members description

Type	Name	Description
Frac32	f32Sin	Sine component, type signed 32-bit fractional
Frac32	f32Cos	Cosine component, type signed 32-bit fractional



## 7.35 MCLIB\_DECOUPLING\_PMSM\_PARAM\_T

```
#include <GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSM.h>
```

### 7.35.1 Description

Structure containing coefficients for calculation of the decoupling algorithm implemented in the [GMCLIB\\_DecouplingPMSM](#) function.

### 7.35.2 Compound Type Members

Table 7-35: Members description

Type	Name	Description
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32Kd	Coefficient $k_{df}$ , in fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$
<a href="#">Word16</a>	w16KdShift	Scaling coefficient $k_{d\_shift}$ , integer format $[-31, 31]$
<a href="#">Frac32</a>	f32Kq	Coefficient $k_{qf}$ , in fractional format normalized to fit into $[-2^{31}, 2^{31} - 1)$
<a href="#">Word16</a>	w16KqShift	Scaling coefficient $k_{q\_shift}$ , integer format $[-31, 31]$

# CHAPTER 8: MACRO DEFINITIONS

---

## 8.1 Macro Definitions Overview

- [GDFLIB\\_FilterFIRInit\(pParam, pState, pInBuf\)](#)
- [GDFLIB\\_FilterFIR\(f32In, pParam, pState\)](#)
- [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR1Init\(pParam\)](#)
- [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR1\(f32In, pParam\)](#)
- [GDFLIB\\_FILTER\\_IIR1\\_DEFAULT](#)
- [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR2Init\(pParam\)](#)
- [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR2\(w32In, pParam\)](#)
- [GDFLIB\\_FILTER\\_IIR2\\_DEFAULT](#)
- [GDFLIB\\_FilterMAInit\(pParam\)](#)
- [GDFLIB\\_FilterMA\(f32In, pParam\)](#)
- [GDFLIB\\_FILTER\\_MA\\_DEFAULT](#)
- [GFLIB\\_Acos\(x\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_Asin\(x\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_Atan\(x\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_AtanXY\(x, y\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_AtanYXShifted\(y, x, p\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_ControllerPIp\(f32InErr, pParam\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_CONTROLLER\\_PI\\_P\\_DEFAULT](#)
- [GFLIB\\_ControllerPIpAW\(f32InErr, pParam\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_CONTROLLER\\_PIAW\\_P\\_DEFAULT](#)
- [GFLIB\\_ControllerPIr\(f32InErr, pParam\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_CONTROLLER\\_PI\\_R\\_DEFAULT](#)
- [GFLIB\\_Cos\(w32In\)](#)

Set of General Math and Motor Control Functions for Cortex M4 Core, Rev. 1.4

## Macro Definitions Overview

- [GFLIB\\_Hyst\(f32In, pParam\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_HYST\\_DEFAULT](#)
- [GFLIB\\_IntegratorTR\(in, pParam\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_INTEGRATOR\\_TR\\_DEFAULT](#)
- [GFLIB\\_Limit\(w32In, pParam\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_LowerLimit\(f32In, pParam\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_Lut1D\(x, pParam\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_Ramp\(in, pParam\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_RAMP\\_DEFAULT](#)
- [GFLIB\\_Sign\(x\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_Sin\(w32In\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_Sqrt\(f32In\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_Tan\(w32In\)](#)
- [GFLIB\\_UpperLimit\(f32In, pParam\)](#)
- [GMCLIB\\_Clark\(pOut, pIn\)](#)
- [GMCLIB\\_ClarkInv\(pOut, pIn\)](#)
- [GMCLIB\\_DecouplingPMSM\(pUdqDec, pUdq, pldq, f32AngularVel, pParam\)](#)
- [GMCLIB\\_DECOUPLINGPMSM\\_DEFAULT](#)
- [GMCLIB\\_ElimDcBusRip\(pOut, pIn, pParams\)](#)
- [GMCLIB\\_ELIMDCBUSRIP\\_DEFAULT](#)
- [GMCLIB\\_Park\(pOut, pInAngle, pIn\)](#)
- [GMCLIB\\_ParkInv\(pOut, pInAngle, pIn\)](#)
- [GMCLIB\\_SvmStd\(pOutput, pInput\)](#)
- [F32SQRT2BY2](#)
- [F32MULBY2\(x, y\)](#)
- [GMCLIB\\_VectorLimit\(w32Out, w32In, pParam\)](#)
- [USE\\_FRAC32\\_ARITHMETIC](#)
- [SFRACT\\_MIN](#)
- [SFRACT\\_MAX](#)

Set of General Math and Motor Control Functions for Cortex M4 Core, Rev. 1.4

- FRACT\_MIN
- FRACT\_MAX
- INT16\_MAX
- INT16\_MIN
- INT32\_MAX
- INT32\_MIN
- FRAC16(x)
- FRAC32(x)
- F16TOINT16(x)
- F32TOINT16(x)
- F64TOINT16(x)
- F16TOINT32(x)
- F32TOINT32(x)
- F64TOINT32(x)
- F16TOINT64(x)
- F32TOINT64(x)
- F64TOINT64(x)
- INT16TOF16(x)
- INT16TOF32(x)
- INT32TOF16(x)
- INT32TOF32(x)
- INT64TOF16(x)
- INT64TOF32(x)
- F16\_1\_DIVBY\_SQRT3
- F32\_1\_DIVBY\_SQRT3
- F16\_SQRT3\_DIVBY\_2
- F32\_SQRT3\_DIVBY\_2
- FALSE
- TRUE

---

GDFLIB\_FilterFIRInit

## 8.2 GDFLIB\_FilterFIRInit

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterFIR.h>
```

### 8.2.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterFIRInit(pParam, pState, pInBuf) \  
    GDFLIB_FilterFIRInitANSIC((pParam), (pState), (pInBuf))
```

### 8.2.2 Description

Function alias for the [GDFLIB\\_FilterFIRInitANSIC](#) function.

## 8.3 GDFLIB\_FilterFIR

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterFIR.h>
```

### 8.3.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterFIR(f32In, pParam, pState) \  
    GDFLIB_FilterFIRANSIC((f32In), (pParam), (pState))
```

### 8.3.2 Description

Function alias for the [GDFLIB\\_FilterFIRANSIC](#) function.

---

GDFLIB\_FilterIIR1Init

## 8.4 GDFLIB\_FilterIIR1Init

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterIIR1.h>
```

### 8.4.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterIIR1Init(pParam) \  
    GDFLIB_FilterIIR1InitANSIC(pParam)
```

### 8.4.2 Description

Function alias for the [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR1InitANSIC](#) function.

## 8.5 GDFLIB\_FilterIIR1

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterIIR1.h>
```

### 8.5.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterIIR1(f32In, pParam) \  
    GDFLIB_FilterIIR1ANSIC(f32In, pParam)
```

### 8.5.2 Description

Function alias for the [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR1ANSIC](#) function.



---

GDFLIB\_FILTER\_IIR1\_DEFAULT

## 8.6 GDFLIB\_FILTER\_IIR1\_DEFAULT

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterIIR1.h>
```

### 8.6.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR1_DEFAULT      0,0,0,0,0
```

### 8.6.2 Description

Macro containing default values of the first order IIR filter structure.

## 8.7 GDFLIB\_FilterIIR2Init

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterIIR2.h>
```

### 8.7.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterIIR2Init(pParam) \  
    GDFLIB_FilterIIR2InitANSIC(pParam)
```

### 8.7.2 Description

Function alias for the [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR2InitANSIC](#) function.

## 8.8 GDFLIB\_FilterIIR2

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterIIR2.h>
```

### 8.8.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterIIR2(w32In, pParam) \  
    GDFLIB_FilterIIR2ANSIC(w32In, pParam)
```

### 8.8.2 Description

Function alias for the [GDFLIB\\_FilterIIR2ANSIC](#) function.

## 8.9 GDFLIB\_FILTER\_IIR2\_DEFAULT

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterIIR2.h>
```

### 8.9.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GDFLIB_FILTER_IIR2_DEFAULT      0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
```

### 8.9.2 Description

Macro containing default values of the second order IIR filter structure.

---

GDFLIB\_FilterMAInit

## 8.10 GDFLIB\_FilterMAInit

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterMA.h>
```

### 8.10.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterMAInit(pParam) \  
    GDFLIB_FilterMAInitANSIC(pParam)
```

### 8.10.2 Description

Function alias for the [GDFLIB\\_FilterMAInitANSIC](#) function.

## 8.11 GDFLIB\_FilterMA

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterMA.h>
```

### 8.11.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GDFLIB_FilterMA(f32In, pParam) \  
    GDFLIB_FilterMAANSIC(f32In, pParam)
```

### 8.11.2 Description

Function alias for the [GDFLIB\\_FilterMAANSIC](#) function.

---

GDFLIB\_FILTER\_MA\_DEFAULT

## 8.12 GDFLIB\_FILTER\_MA\_DEFAULT

```
#include <GDFLIB_FilterMA.h>
```

### 8.12.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GDFLIB_FILTER_MA_DEFAULT          0,0
```

### 8.12.2 Description

Macro containing default values of the first order MA filter structure.

## 8.13 GFLIB\_Acos

```
#include <GFLIB_Acos.h>
```

### 8.13.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_Acos(x) \  
    GFLIB_AcosANSIC((x), &gflibAcosCoef)
```

### 8.13.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_AcosANSIC](#) function.



GFLIB\_Asin

## 8.14 GFLIB\_Asin

```
#include <GFLIB_Asin.h>
```

### 8.14.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_Asin(x) \  
    GFLIB_AsinANSIC((x), &gflibAsinCoef)
```

### 8.14.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_AsinANSIC](#) function.

## 8.15 GFLIB\_Atan

```
#include <GFLIB_Atan.h>
```

### 8.15.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_Atan(x) \  
    GFLIB_AtanANSIC((x), &gflibAtanCoef)
```

### 8.15.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_AtanANSIC](#) function.

GFLIB\_AtanXY

## 8.16 GFLIB\_AtanXY

```
#include <GFLIB_AtanYX.h>
```

### 8.16.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_AtanXY(x, y) \  
    GFLIB_AtanYXANSIC((y), (x))
```

### 8.16.2 Description

## 8.17 GFLIB\_AtanYXShifted

```
#include <GFLIB_AtanYXShifted.h>
```

### 8.17.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_AtanYXShifted(y, x, p) \  
    GFLIB_AtanYXShiftedANSIC((y), (x), (p))
```

### 8.17.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_AtanYXShiftedANSIC](#) function

## GFLIB\_ControllerPIp

### 8.18 GFLIB\_ControllerPIp

```
#include <GFLIB_ControllerPIp.h>
```

#### 8.18.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_ControllerPIp(f32InErr, pParam) \  
    GFLIB_ControllerPIpANSIC(f32InErr, pParam)
```

#### 8.18.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_ControllerPIpANSIC](#) function.

## 8.19 GFLIB\_CONTROLLER\_PI\_P\_DEFAULT

```
#include <GFLIB_ControllerPIp.h>
```

### 8.19.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_P_DEFAULT      0,0,0,0,0,0
```

### 8.19.2 Description

Macro containing default values of the parallel PI controller structure.

## 8.20 GFLIB\_ControllerPipAW

```
#include <GFLIB_ControllerPipAW.h>
```

### 8.20.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_ControllerPipAW(f32InErr, pParam) \  
    GFLIB_ControllerPipAWANSIC(f32InErr, pParam)
```

### 8.20.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_ControllerPipAWANSIC](#) function.

## 8.21 GFLIB\_CONTROLLER\_PIAW\_P\_DEFAULT

```
#include <GFLIB_ControllerPIpAW.h>
```

### 8.21.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PIAW_P_DEFAULT          0,0,0,0,INT32_MIN,INT32_MAX,0,0,0
```

### 8.21.2 Description

Macro containing default values for the structure of parameters of the parallel PI controller with antiwindup.



---

GFLIB\_ControllerPIr

## 8.22 GFLIB\_ControllerPIr

```
#include <GFLIB_ControllerPIr.h>
```

### 8.22.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_ControllerPIr(f32InErr, pParam) \  
    GFLIB_ControllerPIrANSIC(f32InErr, pParam)
```

### 8.22.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_ControllerPIrANSIC](#) function.

## 8.23 GFLIB\_CONTROLLER\_PI\_R\_DEFAULT

```
#include <GFLIB_ControllerPIr.h>
```

### 8.23.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_CONTROLLER_PI_R_DEFAULT      0,0,0,0,0
```

### 8.23.2 Description

Macro containing default values of the recurrent form PI controller structure.

GFLIB\_Cos

## 8.24 GFLIB\_Cos

```
#include <GFLIB_Cos.h>
```

### 8.24.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_Cos(w32In) \  
    GFLIB_CosANSIC(w32In, &gflibCosCoef)
```

### 8.24.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_CosANSIC](#) function.

## 8.25 GFLIB\_Hyst

```
#include <GFLIB_Hyst.h>
```

### 8.25.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_Hyst(f32In, pParam) \  
    GFLIB_HystANSIC(f32In, pParam)
```

### 8.25.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_HystANSIC](#) function.

GFLIB\_HYST\_DEFAULT

## 8.26 GFLIB\_HYST\_DEFAULT

```
#include <GFLIB_Hyst.h>
```

### 8.26.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_HYST_DEFAULT      0,0,0,0,0
```

### 8.26.2 Description

Macro containing default values of the hysteresis function structure.

## 8.27 GFLIB\_IntegratorTR

```
#include <GFLIB_IntegratorTR.h>
```

### 8.27.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_IntegratorTR(in, pParam) \  
    GFLIB_IntegratorTRANSIC(in, pParam)
```

### 8.27.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_IntegratorTRANSIC](#) function.

---

GFLIB\_INTEGRATOR\_TR\_DEFAULT

## 8.28 GFLIB\_INTEGRATOR\_TR\_DEFAULT

```
#include <GFLIB_IntegratorTR.h>
```

### 8.28.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_INTEGRATOR_TR_DEFAULT      0,0,0,0
```

### 8.28.2 Description

Macro containing default values of the integrator structure.

## 8.29 GFLIB\_Limit

```
#include <GFLIB_Limit.h>
```

### 8.29.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_Limit(w32In, pParam) \  
    GFLIB_LimitANSIC((w32In), (pParam))
```

### 8.29.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_LimitANSIC](#) function.



GFLIB\_LowerLimit

## 8.30 GFLIB\_LowerLimit

```
#include <GFLIB_LowerLimit.h>
```

### 8.30.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_LowerLimit(f32In, pParam) \  
    GFLIB_LowerLimitANSIC((f32In), (pParam))
```

### 8.30.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_LowerLimitANSIC](#) function.

## 8.31 GFLIB\_Lut1D

```
#include <GFLIB_Lut1D.h>
```

### 8.31.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_Lut1D(x, pParam) \  
    GFLIB_Lut1DANSIC((x), (pParam))
```

### 8.31.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_Lut1DANSIC](#) function.

---

GFLIB\_Ramp

## 8.32 GFLIB\_Ramp

```
#include <GFLIB_Ramp.h>
```

### 8.32.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_Ramp(in, pParam) \  
    GFLIB_RampANSIC(in, pParam)
```

### 8.32.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_RampANSIC](#) function.

## 8.33 GFLIB\_RAMP\_DEFAULT

```
#include <GFLIB_Ramp.h>
```

### 8.33.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_RAMP_DEFAULT          0,0,0
```

### 8.33.2 Description

Macro containing default values of the Ramp structure.

---

GFLIB\_Sign

## 8.34 GFLIB\_Sign

```
#include <GFLIB_Sign.h>
```

### 8.34.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_Sign(x) \  
    GFLIB_SignANSIC(x)
```

### 8.34.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_SignANSIC](#) function.

## 8.35 GFLIB\_Sin

```
#include <GFLIB_Sin.h>
```

### 8.35.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_Sin(w32In) \  
    GFLIB_SinANSIC(w32In, &gflibSinCoef)
```

### 8.35.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_SinANSIC](#) function.

GFLIB\_Sqrt

## 8.36 GFLIB\_Sqrt

```
#include <GFLIB_Sqrt.h>
```

### 8.36.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_Sqrt(f32In) \  
    GFLIB_SqrtANSIC(f32In)
```

### 8.36.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_SqrtANSIC](#) function.

## 8.37 GFLIB\_Tan

```
#include <GFLIB_Tan.h>
```

### 8.37.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_Tan(w32In) \  
    GFLIB_TanANSIC(w32In, &gflibTanCoef)
```

### 8.37.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_TanANSIC](#) function.



GFLIB\_UpperLimit

## 8.38 GFLIB\_UpperLimit

```
#include <GFLIB_UpperLimit.h>
```

### 8.38.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GFLIB_UpperLimit(f32In, pParam) \  
    GFLIB_UpperLimitANSIC((f32In), (pParam))
```

### 8.38.2 Description

Function alias for the [GFLIB\\_UpperLimitANSIC](#) function.

## 8.39 GMCLIB\_Clark

```
#include <GMCLIB_Clark.h>
```

### 8.39.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GMCLIB_Clark(pOut, pIn) \  
    GMCLIB_ClarkANSIC(pOut, pIn)
```

### 8.39.2 Description

Function alias for the [GMCLIB\\_ClarkANSIC](#) function.

## GMCLIB\_ClarkInv

### 8.40 GMCLIB\_ClarkInv

```
#include <GMCLIB_ClarkInv.h>
```

#### 8.40.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GMCLIB_ClarkInv(pOut, pIn) \  
    GMCLIB_ClarkInvANSIC(pOut, pIn)
```

#### 8.40.2 Description

Function alias for the [GMCLIB\\_ClarkInvANSIC](#) function.

## 8.41 GMCLIB\_DecouplingPMSM

```
#include <GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSM.h>
```

### 8.41.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSM(pUdqDec, pUdq, pIdq, f32AngularVel, pParam) \  
    GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSMANSIC(pUdqDec, pUdq, pIdq, f32AngularVel, pParam)
```

### 8.41.2 Description

Function alias for the [GMCLIB\\_DecouplingPMSMANSIC](#) function.

---

GMCLIB\_DECOUPLINGPMSM\_DEFAULT

## 8.42 GMCLIB\_DECOUPLINGPMSM\_DEFAULT

```
#include <GMCLIB_DecouplingPMSM.h>
```

### 8.42.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GMCLIB_DECOUPLINGPMSM_DEFAULT      0,0,0,0
```

### 8.42.2 Description

Macro containing reset values of the parameters for the decoupling algorithm implemented in the [GMCLIB\\_DecouplingPMSM](#) function.

## 8.43 GMCLIB\_ElimDcBusRip

```
#include <GMCLIB_ElimDcBusRip.h>
```

### 8.43.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GMCLIB_ElimDcBusRip(pOut, pIn, pParams) \  
    GMCLIB_ElimDcBusRipANSIC(pOut, pIn, pParams)
```

### 8.43.2 Description

Function alias for the [GMCLIB\\_ElimDcBusRipANSIC](#) function.

---

GMCLIB\_ELIMDCBUSRIP\_DEFAULT

## 8.44 GMCLIB\_ELIMDCBUSRIP\_DEFAULT

```
#include <GMCLIB_ElimDcBusRip.h>
```

### 8.44.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GMCLIB_ELIMDCBUSRIP_DEFAULT      0,0
```

### 8.44.2 Description

Macro containing default values for the parameter structure of the [GMCLIB\\_ElimDcBusRip](#) function.

## 8.45 GMCLIB\_Park

```
#include <GMCLIB_Park.h>
```

### 8.45.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GMCLIB_Park(pOut, pInAngle, pIn) \  
    GMCLIB_ParkANSIC(pOut, pInAngle, pIn)
```

### 8.45.2 Description

Function alias for the [GMCLIB\\_ParkANSIC](#) function.



## GMCLIB\_ParkInv

### 8.46 GMCLIB\_ParkInv

```
#include <GMCLIB_ParkInv.h>
```

#### 8.46.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GMCLIB_ParkInv(pOut, pInAngle, pIn) \  
    GMCLIB_ParkInvANSIC(pOut, pInAngle, pIn)
```

#### 8.46.2 Description

Function alias for the [GMCLIB\\_ParkInvANSIC](#) function.

## 8.47 GMCLIB\_SvmStd

```
#include <GMCLIB_SvmStd.h>
```

### 8.47.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GMCLIB_SvmStd(pOutput, pInput) \  
    GMCLIB_SvmStdANSIC(pOutput, pInput)
```

### 8.47.2 Description

Function alias for the [GMCLIB\\_SvmStdANSIC](#) function.

---

F32SQRT2BY2

## 8.48 F32SQRT2BY2

```
#include <GMCLIB_VectorLimit.c>
```

### 8.48.1 Macro Definition

```
#define F32SQRT2BY2          0x5A82799A
```

### 8.48.2 Description

Local define for the GMCLIB\_VectorLimit function holding a 32-bit  $\sqrt{2}/2$ .

## 8.49 F32MULBY2

```
#include <GMCLIB_VectorLimit.c>
```

### 8.49.1 Macro Definition

```
#define F32MULBY2(x, y) \  
    ((Word32) (((Word64) (x))*((Word64) (y)))»32)
```

### 8.49.2 Description

Local define for the [GMCLIB\\_VectorLimit](#) function holding a 32-bit  $\sqrt{2}/2$ .

## GMCLIB\_VectorLimit

### 8.50 GMCLIB\_VectorLimit

```
#include <GMCLIB_VectorLimit.h>
```

#### 8.50.1 Macro Definition

```
#define GMCLIB_VectorLimit(w32Out, w32In, pParam) \  
    GMCLIB_VectorLimitANSIC((w32Out), (w32In), (pParam))
```

#### 8.50.2 Description

Function alias for the [GMCLIB\\_VectorLimitANSIC](#) function.

## 8.51 USE\_FRAC32\_ARITHMETIC

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.51.1 Macro Definition

```
#define USE_FRAC32_ARITHMETIC
```

### 8.51.2 Description

If USE\_ASM macro is enabled, then, if existing, an assembly version of the functions are used. If USE\_FRAC32\_ARITHMETIC macro is enabled, then 32 bit arithmetic is used for intermediate calculations, achieving the best possible calculation accuracy.

---

SFRACT\_MIN

## 8.52 SFRACT\_MIN

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.52.1 Macro Definition

```
#define SFRACT_MIN          (-1.0)
```

### 8.52.2 Description

Constant representing the maximal negative value of a signed fixed point 16-bit fractional number equalling -1.0.

## 8.53 SFRACT\_MAX

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.53.1 Macro Definition

```
#define SFRACT_MAX          (0.999969482421875)
```

### 8.53.2 Description

Constant representing the maximal positive value of a signed fixed point 16-bit fractional number equalling 0.999969482421875.



---

FRACT\_MIN

## 8.54 FRACT\_MIN

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.54.1 Macro Definition

```
#define FRACT_MIN          (-1.0)
```

### 8.54.2 Description

Constant representing the maximal negative value of a signed fixed point 32-bit fractional number equalling -1.0.

## 8.55 FRACT\_MAX

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.55.1 Macro Definition

```
#define FRACT_MAX (0.9999999995343387126922607421875)
```

### 8.55.2 Description

Constant representing the maximal positive value of a signed fixed point 32-bit fractional number equalling 0.9999999995343387126922607421875.

---

INT16\_MAX

## 8.56 INT16\_MAX

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.56.1 Macro Definition

```
#define INT16_MAX ((Word16) 0x7fff)
```

### 8.56.2 Description

Constant representing the maximal positive value of a signed fixed point 16-bit integer number equalling  $2^{16-1} - 1 = 0x7fff$ .

## 8.57 INT16\_MIN

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.57.1 Macro Definition

```
#define INT16_MIN ((Word16) 0x8000)
```

### 8.57.2 Description

Constant representing the maximal negative value of a signed fixed point 16-bit integer number equalling  $-2^{16-1} = 0x8000$ .

---

INT32\_MAX

## 8.58 INT32\_MAX

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.58.1 Macro Definition

```
#define INT32_MAX ((Word32) 0x7fffffff)
```

### 8.58.2 Description

Constant representing the maximal positive value of a signed fixed point 32-bit integer number equalling  $2^{32-1} - 1 = 0x7ff\ ffff$ .

## 8.59 INT32\_MIN

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.59.1 Macro Definition

```
#define INT32_MIN ((Word32) 0x80000000)
```

### 8.59.2 Description

Constant representing the maximal negative value of a signed fixed point 32-bit integer number equalling  $-2^{32-1} = 0x8000\ 0000$ .

## 8.60 FRAC16

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.60.1 Macro Definition

```
#define FRAC16(x) \
    ((Frac16) ((x) < (SFRACT_MAX) ? ((x) >= SFRACT_MIN ? (x)*0x8000 : \
0x8000) : 0x7fff))
```

### 8.60.2 Description

Macro converting a signed fractional [-1,1) number into a fixed point 16-bit number in the format Q1.15.

## 8.61 FRAC32

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.61.1 Macro Definition

```
#define FRAC32(x) \  
    ((Frac32) ((x) < (FRACT_MAX) ? ((x) >= FRACT_MIN ? (x)*0x80000000 :  
0x80000000) : 0x7fffffff))
```

### 8.61.2 Description

Macro converting a signed fractional [-1,1) number into a fixed point 32-bit number in the format Q1.31.



---

F16TOINT16

## 8.62 F16TOINT16

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.62.1 Macro Definition

```
#define F16TOINT16(x) \  
    ((Word16) (x))
```

### 8.62.2 Description

Type casting - a signed 16-bit fractional value cast as a signed 16-bit integer.

## 8.63 F32TOINT16

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.63.1 Macro Definition

```
#define F32TOINT16(x) \  
    ((Word16) (x))
```

### 8.63.2 Description

Type casting - the lower 16 bits of a signed fractional 32-bit fractional value cast as a signed integer 16-bit integer.

---

**F64TOINT16****8.64 F64TOINT16**

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

**8.64.1 Macro Definition**

```
#define F64TOINT16(x) \  
    ((Word16) (x))
```

**8.64.2 Description**

Type casting - the lower 16 bits of a signed fractional 64-bit fractional value cast as a signed integer 16-bit integer.

## 8.65 F16TOINT32

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.65.1 Macro Definition

```
#define F16TOINT32(x) \  
    ((Word32) (x))
```

### 8.65.2 Description

Type casting - a signed 16-bit fractional value cast as a signed 32-bit integer, the value placed at the lower 16 bits of the 32-bit result.

**F32TOINT32****8.66 F32TOINT32**

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

**8.66.1 Macro Definition**

```
#define F32TOINT32(x) \  
    ((Word32) (x))
```

**8.66.2 Description**

Type casting - a signed 32-bit fractional value cast as a signed 32-bit integer.

## 8.67 F64TOINT32

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.67.1 Macro Definition

```
#define F64TOINT32(x) \  
    ((Word32) (x))
```

### 8.67.2 Description

Type casting - lower 32 bits of a signed 64-bit fractional value cast as a signed 32-bit integer.

---

F16TOINT64

## 8.68 F16TOINT64

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.68.1 Macro Definition

```
#define F16TOINT64(x) \  
    ((tS64) (x))
```

### 8.68.2 Description

Type casting - a signed 16-bit fractional value cast as a signed 64-bit integer, the value placed at the lower 16 bits of the 64-bit result.

## 8.69 F32TOINT64

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.69.1 Macro Definition

```
#define F32TOINT64(x) \  
    ((tS64) (x))
```

### 8.69.2 Description

Type casting - a signed 32-bit fractional value cast as a signed 64-bit integer, the value placed at the lower 32 bits of the 64-bit result.



---

F64TOINT64

## 8.70 F64TOINT64

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.70.1 Macro Definition

```
#define F64TOINT64(x) \  
    ((tS64) (x))
```

### 8.70.2 Description

Type casting - a signed 64-bit fractional value cast as a signed 64-bit integer.

## 8.71 INT16TOF16

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.71.1 Macro Definition

```
#define INT16TOF16(x) \  
    ((Frac16) (x))
```

### 8.71.2 Description

Type casting - a signed 16-bit integer value cast as a signed 16-bit fractional.

---

INT16TOF32

## 8.72 INT16TOF32

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.72.1 Macro Definition

```
#define INT16TOF32(x) \  
    ((Frac32) (x))
```

### 8.72.2 Description

Type casting - a signed 16-bit integer value cast as a signed 32-bit fractional, the value placed at the lower 16 bits of the 32-bit result.

## 8.73 INT32TOF16

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.73.1 Macro Definition

```
#define INT32TOF16(x) \  
    ((Frac16) (x))
```

### 8.73.2 Description

Type casting - the lower 16 bits of a signed 32-bit integer value cast as a signed 16-bit fractional.

---

INT32TOF32

## 8.74 INT32TOF32

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.74.1 Macro Definition

```
#define INT32TOF32(x) \  
    ((Frac32) (x))
```

### 8.74.2 Description

Type casting - a signed 32-bit integer value cast as a signed fractional 32-bit fractional.

## 8.75 INT64TOF16

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.75.1 Macro Definition

```
#define INT64TOF16(x) \  
    ((Frac16) (x))
```

### 8.75.2 Description

Type casting - the lower 16 bits of a signed 64-bit integer value cast as a signed 16-bit fractional.

---

INT64TOF32

## 8.76 INT64TOF32

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.76.1 Macro Definition

```
#define INT64TOF32(x) \  
    ((Frac32) (x))
```

### 8.76.2 Description

Type casting - the lower 32 bits of a signed 64-bit integer value cast as a signed 32-bit fractional.

## 8.77 F16\_1\_DIVBY\_SQRT3

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.77.1 Macro Definition

```
#define F16_1_DIVBY_SQRT3 ((Frac16) 0x49E7)
```

### 8.77.2 Description

One over  $\sqrt{3}$  with a 16-bit result, the result rounded for a better precision, that is,  $round(1/sqrt(3)*2^{15})$



---

F32\_1\_DIVBY\_SQRT3

## 8.78 F32\_1\_DIVBY\_SQRT3

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.78.1 Macro Definition

```
#define F32_1_DIVBY_SQRT3 ((Frac32) 0x49E69D16)
```

### 8.78.2 Description

One over  $\sqrt{3}$  with a 32-bit result, the result rounded for a better precision, that is,  $round(1/sqrt(3)*2^{31})$

## 8.79 F16\_SQRT3\_DIVBY\_2

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.79.1 Macro Definition

```
#define F16_SQRT3_DIVBY_2 ((Frac16) 0x6EDA)
```

### 8.79.2 Description

$\sqrt{3}/2$  with a 16-bit result, the result rounded for a better precision, that is,  $round(sqrt(3)/2 * 2^{15})$

F32\_SQRT3\_DIVBY\_2

## 8.80 F32\_SQRT3\_DIVBY\_2

```
#include <SWLIBS_Defines.h>
```

### 8.80.1 Macro Definition

```
#define F32_SQRT3_DIVBY_2 ((Frac32) 0x6ED9EBA1)
```

### 8.80.2 Description

$\sqrt{3}/2$  with a 32-bit result, the result rounded for a better precision, that is,  $round(sqrt(3)/2 * 2^{31})$

## 8.81 FALSE

```
#include <SWLIBS_Typedefs.h>
```

### 8.81.1 Macro Definition

```
#define FALSE ((bool)0)
```

### 8.81.2 Description

Boolean type FALSE constant

---

TRUE

## 8.82 TRUE

```
#include <SWLIBS_Typedefs.h>
```

### 8.82.1 Macro Definition

```
#define TRUE ((bool)1)
```

### 8.82.2 Description

Boolean type TRUE constant

## How to Reach Us:

### Home Page:

[www.freescale.com](http://www.freescale.com)

### Web Support:

<http://www.freescale.com/support>

### USA/Europe or Locations Not Listed:

Freescale Semiconductor, Inc.  
Technical Information Center, EL516  
2100 East Elliot Road  
Tempe, Arizona 85284  
1-800-521-6274 or +1-480-768-2130  
[www.freescale.com/support](http://www.freescale.com/support)

### Europe, Middle East, and Africa:

Freescale Halbleiter Deutschland GmbH  
Technical Information Center  
Schatzbogen 7  
81829 Muenchen, Germany  
+44 1296 380 456 (English)  
+46 8 52200080 (English)  
+49 89 92103 559 (German)  
+33 1 69 35 48 48 (French)  
[www.freescale.com/support](http://www.freescale.com/support)

### Japan:

Freescale Semiconductor Japan Ltd. Headquarters  
ARCO Tower 15F  
1-8-1, Shimo-Meguro, Meguro-ku,  
Tokyo 153-0064  
Japan  
0120 191014 or +81 3 5437 9125  
[support.japan@freescale.com](mailto:support.japan@freescale.com)

### Asia/Pacific:

Freescale Semiconductor China Ltd.  
Exchange Building 23F  
No. 118 Jianguo Road  
Chaoyang District  
Beijing 100022  
China  
+86 10 5879 8000  
[support.asia@freescale.com](mailto:support.asia@freescale.com)

### For Literature Requests Only:

Freescale Semiconductor Literature Distribution Center  
P.O. Box 5405  
Denver, Colorado 80217  
1-800-441-2447 or +1-303-675-2140  
Fax: +1-303-675-2150  
[LDCForFreescaleSemiconductor@hibbertgroup.com](mailto:LDCForFreescaleSemiconductor@hibbertgroup.com)

RoHS-compliant and/or Pb-free versions of Freescale products have the functionality and electrical characteristics of their non-RoHS-compliant and/or non-Pb-free counterparts. For further information, see [www.freescale.com](http://www.freescale.com) or contact your Freescale sales representative.

For information on Freescale's Environmental Products program, go to [www.freescale.com/epp](http://www.freescale.com/epp)

Information in this document is provided solely to enable system and software implementers to use Freescale Semiconductor products. There are no express or implied copyright licenses granted hereunder to design or fabricate any integrated circuits or integrated circuits based on the information in this document.

Freescale Semiconductor reserves the right to make changes without further notice to any products herein. Freescale Semiconductor makes no warranty, representation or guarantee regarding the suitability of its products for any particular purpose, nor does Freescale Semiconductor assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any product or circuit, and specifically disclaims any and all liability, including without limitation consequential or incidental damages. "Typical" parameters that may be provided in Freescale Semiconductor data sheets and/or specifications can and do vary in different applications and actual performance may vary over time. All operating parameters, including "Typicals", must be validated for each customer application by customer's technical experts. Freescale Semiconductor does not convey any license under its patent rights nor the rights of others. Freescale Semiconductor products are not designed, intended, or authorized for use as components in systems intended for surgical implant into the body, or other applications intended to support or sustain life, or for any other application in which the failure of the Freescale Semiconductor product could create a situation where personal injury or death may occur. Should Buyer purchase or use Freescale Semiconductor products for any such unintended or unauthorized application, Buyer shall indemnify and hold Freescale Semiconductor and its officers, employees, subsidiaries, affiliates, and distributors harmless against all claims, costs, damages, and expenses, and reasonable attorney fees arising out of, directly or indirectly, any claim of personal injury or death associated with such unintended or unauthorized use, even if such claim alleges that Freescale Semiconductor was negligent regarding the design or manufacture of the part.

Freescale™ and the Freescale logo are trademarks of Freescale Semiconductor, Inc. All other product or service names are the property of their respective owners.

©Freescale Semiconductor, Inc. 2009. All rights reserved.